HSK 4 Grammar

Chinese grammar · bilingual edition

Contents

1 Adjectives **3**
- 1.1 全 + Noun (the whole / all of) . . . 3
- 1.2 Adj + 死了 (extremely …) . . . 4
- 1.3 Practice without the models . . . 6
- 1.4 Answers and explanations . . . 8

2 Adverbs **10**
- 2.1 差不多 (almost / about the same) . . . 10
- 2.2 看来 (it seems / in one's view) . . . 11
- 2.3 正好 (just right / exactly) . . . 12
- 2.4 只好 (have no choice but to) . . . 14
- 2.5 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation) . . . 15
- 2.6 可 + Adj (emphatic) . . . 16
- 2.7 原来 (so it turns out / all along) . . . 17
- 2.8 差点 (almost / nearly) . . . 19
- 2.9 从来 + 不 / 没 (never) . . . 20
- 2.10 结果 (as a result / in the end) . . . 21
- 2.11 够 (enough / sufficient) . . . 23
- 2.12 甚至 (even / to the point that) . . . 24
- 2.13 还是 + Verb (had better) . . . 25
- 2.14 最好 (had best / it's best to) . . . 26
- 2.15 不得不 (have no choice but to) . . . 27
- 2.16 到底 (on earth / after all) . . . 29
- 2.17 究竟 (exactly / on earth) . . . 30
- 2.18 刚 + Verb (just did) . . . 31
- 2.19 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one) . . . 32
- 2.20 本来 (originally / at first) . . . 33
- 2.21 就 (only / just – small quantity) . . . 35
- 2.22 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do) . . . 36
- 2.23 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably) . . . 37
- 2.24 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly) . . . 38
- 2.25 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me …?) . . . 40
- 2.26 先 … , 再 … (first …, then …) . . . 41
- 2.27 也都 (also all of them) . . . 42
- 2.28 Practice without the models . . . 43
- 2.29 Answers and explanations . . . 57

3 Adverbs with Adjectives **73**
- 3.1 挺 + adjective (+ 的) – quite / pretty . . . 73
- 3.2 Practice without the models . . . 74
- 3.3 Answers and explanations . . . 75

4 Auxiliary Words **76**
4.1 Noun, Noun + 什么的 (…and so on) . . . 76
4.2 … 等 / 等等 (etc.) . . . 77
4.3 Practice without the models . . . 78
4.4 Answers and explanations . . . 80

5 Conjunctions **82**
5.1 不过 (a softer "but") . . . 82
5.2 于是 (thereupon / and so) . . . 83
5.3 还有 (also / and / what's more) . . . 85
5.4 另外 (besides / in addition) . . . 86
5.5 再说 (besides / what's more) . . . 87
5.6 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but") . . . 88
5.7 而 (whereas / and yet) . . . 89
5.8 用 / 通过 … 来 … (by means of …) . . . 91
5.9 Practice without the models . . . 92
5.10 Answers and explanations . . . 97

6 Nouns **102**
6.1 其中 (among them / of which) . . . 102
6.2 Practice without the models . . . 103
6.3 Answers and explanations . . . 105

7 Numbers **106**
7.1 Fractions with 分之 . . . 106
7.2 Practice without the models . . . 107
7.3 Answers and explanations . . . 108

8 Particles **109**
8.1 Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation) . . . 109
8.2 … 吧，… ； … 吧，… (weighing options) . . . 110
8.3 Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty) . . . 111
8.4 Practice without the models . . . 112
8.5 Answers and explanations . . . 115

9 Prepositions **117**
9.1 随着 (as / along with) . . . 117
9.2 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding) . . . 118
9.3 Practice without the models . . . 120
9.4 Answers and explanations . . . 121

10 Sentence Patterns **123**
10.1 并 + 不 / 没 (emphatic denial) . . . 123
10.2 Practice without the models . . . 124

10.3 Answers and explanations . . . 125

11 Sentence patterns **126**
11.1 以 A 为 B (take A as B) . . . 126
11.2 Practice without the models . . . 127
11.3 Answers and explanations . . . 128

12 Verbs **129**
12.1 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative) . . . 129
12.2 要看 / 得看 (it depends on) . . . 130
12.3 好像 (it seems / as if) . . . 131
12.4 在于 (lies in / consists in) . . . 132
12.5 以为 (mistakenly think) . . . 134
12.6 通过 (through / by means of) . . . 135
12.7 来自 (come from) . . . 136
12.8 来 as a dummy verb (I'll do it) . . . 137
12.9 Practice without the models . . . 139
12.10 Answers and explanations . . . 143

13 Auxiliary verbs **148**
13.1 不用 (don't need to) . . . 148
13.2 得 (děi) (must / have to) . . . 149
13.3 Practice without the models . . . 150
13.4 Answers and explanations . . . 152

14 Verb phrases **154**
14.1 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and) . . . 154
14.2 少 + Verb (do less) . . . 155
14.3 多 + Verb (do more) . . . 156
14.4 由 + Person + Verb (done by) . . . 157
14.5 并且 (moreover / and also) . . . 159
14.6 从来 + 不 / 没 (never) . . . 160
14.7 值得 + Verb (worth doing) . . . 161
14.8 Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until) . . . 162
14.9 害得 (cause sb to suffer) . . . 163
14.10 Separable verbs (离合词) . . . 165
14.11 V 着 V 着就 … 了 (while …-ing, suddenly) . . . 166
14.12 Practice without the models . . . 167
14.13 Answers and explanations . . . 173

15 "But" Statements **180**
15.1 尽管 … , 但是 … (although) . . . 180
15.2 倒 (actually / on the contrary) . . . 181
15.3 却 + Predicate (however / yet) . . . 182

15.4 Practice without the models . . . 184
15.5 Answers and explanations . . . 186

16 "Even If" Statements **188**
16.1 即使 … ，也 … (even if) . . . 188
16.2 Practice without the models . . . 189
16.3 Answers and explanations . . . 190

17 "If" Statements **191**
17.1 要是 … ，就 … (if – spoken) . . . 191
17.2 Practice without the models . . . 192
17.3 Answers and explanations . . . 193

18 "No Matter" Statements **194**
18.1 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter) . . . 194
18.2 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless) . . . 195
18.3 Practice without the models . . . 196
18.4 Answers and explanations . . . 198

19 Cause/Effect Statements **200**
19.1 由于 (due to / owing to) . . . 200
19.2 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that) . . . 201
19.3 因此 (therefore / for this reason) . . . 202
19.4 Practice without the models . . . 203
19.5 Answers and explanations . . . 206

20 Complements **208**
20.1 Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it) . . . 208
20.2 Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4) . . . 209
20.3 Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to …) . . . 210
20.4 Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4) . . . 211
20.5 Practice without the models . . . 213
20.6 Answers and explanations . . . 216

21 Conditional Statements **219**
21.1 只要 … ，就 … (as long as) . . . 219
21.2 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless) . . . 220
21.3 Practice without the models . . . 221
21.4 Answers and explanations . . . 223

22 Noun Phrases **225**
22.1 所有 (的) + Noun (all) . . . 225
22.2 … 之一 (one of) . . . 226
22.3 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another) . . . 227

22.4 Practice without the models . . . 228
22.5 Answers and explanations . . . 231

23 Sentence Patterns **233**
23.1 连 … 都 … 不 / 没 (not even) . . . 233
23.2 为 … 而 … (for the sake of) . . . 234
23.3 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any) . . . 235
23.4 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …) . . . 236
23.5 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location) . . . 238
23.6 Practice without the models . . . 239
23.7 Answers and explanations . . . 242

24 Basic/Simple Sentence Patterns **245**
24.1 连 … 都 / 也 (even) . . . 245
24.2 Question Word + 都 (every) . . . 246
24.3 A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times) . . . 247
24.4 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all) . . . 248
24.5 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best) . . . 249
24.6 对 … 来说 (for / as far as … is concerned) . . . 251
24.7 Practice without the models . . . 252
24.8 Answers and explanations . . . 256

25 Complex Sentence Patterns **260**
25.1 Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object) . . . 260
25.2 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever) . . . 261
25.3 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other) . . . 262
25.4 Practice without the models . . . 264
25.5 Answers and explanations . . . 266

26 Not only... but also... **268**
26.1 不但 / 不仅 … ，而且 / 还 / 也 … (not only … but also) . . . 268
26.2 Practice without the models . . . 269
26.3 Answers and explanations . . . 270

27 Comparing similar adverbs **271**
27.1 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out) . . . 271
27.2 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to) . . . 272
27.3 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word) . . . 273
27.4 Practice without the models . . . 275
27.5 Answers and explanations . . . 277

28 Comparing similar prepositions **279**
28.1 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding) . . . 279
28.2 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point) . . . 280

28.3 Practice without the models 281
28.4 Answers and explanations 283

29 Comparing similar separate functions **285**
29.1 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary) 285
29.2 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain) 286
29.3 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable) 287
29.4 Practice without the models 288
29.5 Answers and explanations 291

30 Comparing similar time words **293**
30.1 以后 vs 的时候 (after vs when) 293
30.2 Practice without the models 294
30.3 Answers and explanations 295

1 Adjectives

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

1.1 ■ 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

1.1.1 One word that gathers the whole group

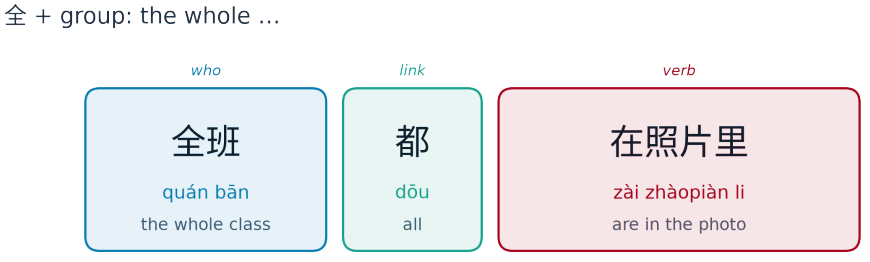
- The photo from your class trip arrives. Everyone is in it: **全班都在照片里。** – the whole class is in the photo. **全** gathers every member of the group into one word.
- Today you will say *the whole* ____ about families, classes, companies and years – and you will learn where 全 stops, because it does not mean "every".

全班都在照片里。
quán bān dōu zài zhàopiàn lǐ
Word guide: 全班 – the whole class; 都 – all; 在 – be in/at; 照片 – photo; 里 – inside.

1.1.2 Build the form

- The pattern is **全 + noun**, usually followed by **都 + verb**: 全班 + 都 + 在照片里. The 都 marks that the verb covers the whole gathered group.
- More groups: **全家** the whole family, **全国** the whole country, **全年** the whole year, **全校** the whole school. The noun after 全 names the container; 全 fills it.

全年我们都在实习。
quán nián wǒmen dōu zài shíxí
Word guide: 全年 – the whole year; 我们 – we; 都 – all; 在 – at; 实习 – do internships.



1.1.3 Read it in real situations

- 全家都来了。– the whole family came (the family we are talking about).
- 这家公司全年都招人。– this company hires all year round.
- 全班都通过了考试。– the whole class passed the exam. 通过 to pass; 考试 exam.

全班都通过了考试。
quán bān dōu tōngguò le kǎoshì

Word guide: 全班 – the whole class; 都 – all; 通过 – pass; 考试 – exam.

1.1.4 全 is not 每, and not every

- **全 + noun** gathers one bounded group: 全家 = the whole of *this* family. **每 + noun** distributes over individuals: 每个家庭都爱拍照 – *every* family loves taking photos (each one, separately). A bounded whole and a universal "every" are different claims.
- The classic mistake: 全家都喜欢这个餐厅。does **not** mean "all families like this restaurant" – it says *our/the* family does. For a universal claim you want 所有 or 每个: 所有家庭 …
- Near-correct check: 全年 vs 每年. 全年都在工作 = working the whole year through; 每年都来 = comes every year. Pick the one that matches your meaning.

1.1.5 Use it yourself

- Say it about your life: your family, your class, your city. 我家 …, 我们全班 …, 全城 … – one true sentence each, out loud or written down.
- Compare **全家来了** and **全家都来了**: both can be grammatical. Adding 都 explicitly emphasises that every family member came; it is common in this pattern, but not compulsory.

1.1.6 New context, same decision

- A shop sign: 全场半价 – the whole store at half price (场 here is the venue). A weather report: 全市有雨 – rain across the whole city. Same 全, new containers; check each group is one bounded whole.
- Tomorrow, before you reopen this page: say "my whole family came" and "every family" aloud. If the two come out identical, redo the contrast step – that difference is the lesson.
- 全 + noun gathers one bounded group (全家, 全班, 全国); 都 commonly emphasises that every member is included; it is not compulsory. For "every", use 每/所有 – 全家都来了 is about *this* family, not all families.

Practise this pattern step by step.

1.2 ■ Adj + 死了 (extremely …)

1.2.1 Melting in July

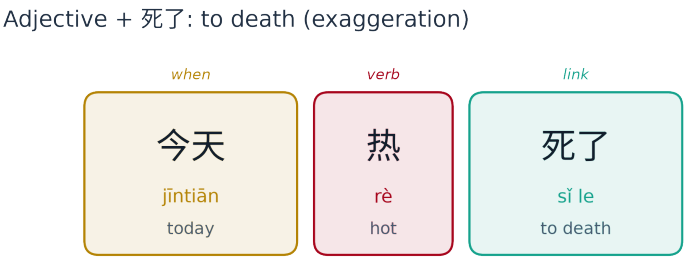
- You come into the classroom after cycling across town in 38 degrees.
- **今天热死了！** – "It's boiling today!" 死了 exaggerates a feeling to the extreme.

1.2.2 Adjective + 死了

- **Adj + 死了** = "extremely, to death" in casual speech: 累死了, 饿死了, 忙死了.
- It ends the clause, and the adjective stands alone: 冷死了, not 很冷死了.

我饿死了，快吃饭吧！

wǒ è sǐ le kuài chī fàn ba
Word guide: 我 – I; 饿 – hungry; 死了 – to death; 快 – quickly; 吃饭 – eat.



1.2.3 Mostly complaints, sometimes joy

- Complaints are typical: **这个作业难死了。** – "This homework is impossibly hard."
- Strong positive feelings work too: **听到这个消息，我高兴死了！** – "I was over the moon when I heard!"

这个作业难死了。
zhè ge zuò yè nán sǐ le
Word guide: 这个 – this; 作业 – homework; 难 – hard; 死了 – to death.

1.2.4 Casual only

- Use it with friends and family; in an essay or a formal email, write 非常累 or 十分饿 instead.
- No 很 or 非常 in front, and nothing between the adjective and 死了: 累死了, not 很累死了.

1.2.5 死了 versus 极了 and 得要命

- 好极了 sounds enthusiastic and fits praise; 好死了 is rare, because 死了 leans to complaints.
- 得要命 is equally colloquial: 累得要命 – "dead tired". With verbs of missing: 想死你了 – "I miss you like crazy."

我想死你了！
wǒ xiǎng sǐ nǐ le
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – miss; 死 – to death; 你 – you.

1.2.6 Recap

- **Adj + 死了** = extremely (colloquial, often a complaint): 热死了, 累死了, 难死了.
- No 很 before it; keep it out of formal writing, where 非常 / 十分 fit.

Practise this pattern step by step.

1.3 ■ Practice without the models

1.3.1 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

0101.1 Using the lesson pattern in this demonstrated example: The whole family came: …… 家都来了。

0101.2 What does 全 mean before a noun?

- A. the whole / all of
- B. only / just

0101.3 全 often pairs with 都 (全家都来了).

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0101.4 Build: "The whole family came."

Arrange all chunks: 都 / 来了 / 全家

0101.5 All members of a family arrive at a gathering. What does 全家都来了。 communicate?

- A. 全家 means only one family member.
- B. 全家 includes the entire family being discussed.

0101.6 In the opening situation: 全家 includes the entire family being discussed.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0101.7 Recall the situation: One word that gathers the whole group. Decide what the speaker wanted to communicate. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

1.3.2 Adj + 死了 (extremely …)

0102.1 Complain to a friend: "I'm exhausted!" 我累 ……!

0102.2 Which sentence suits a formal report?

- A. 这个地区的冬天冷死。
- B. 这个地区的冬天很冷死了。
- C. 这个地区的冬天冷死了。
- D. 这个地区的冬天非常冷。

0102.3 Build: "This homework is impossibly hard."

Arrange all chunks: 死了。 / 难 / 这个作业

0102.4 想死你了 means "I miss you terribly."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0102.5 You come into the classroom after cycling across town in 38 degrees. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one

detail and try again.
Write or say your own response before reading the key.

1.4 ■ Answers and explanations

1.4.1 全 + Noun (the whole / all of)

0101.1 全

全 + Noun = the whole / all the …: 全家 (the whole family).

0101.2 A. the whole / all of

全 = whole / entire: 全班, 全国, 全世界.

0101.3 True.

Yes – 全 + Noun + 都 is very common: 全家都来了.

0101.4 全家都来了

全 + Noun + 都 + Verb: 全家 + 都 + 来了.

0101.5 B. 全家 includes the entire family being discussed.

全家 includes the entire family being discussed. The group is defined by context. 全家 does not refer to every family in the world.

0101.6 True.

The group is defined by context. 全家 does not refer to every family in the world. 全家 includes the entire family being discussed.

0101.7 One possible response: 全班都在照片里。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- **全 + noun** gathers one bounded group: 全家 = the whole of *this* family. **每 + noun** distributes over individuals: 每个家庭都爱拍照 – *every* family loves taking photos (each one, separately). A bounded whole and a universal "every" are different claims.
- The classic mistake: 全家都喜欢这个餐厅。does **not** mean "all families like this restaurant" – it says *our/the* family does. For a universal claim you want 所有 or 每个: 所有家庭 …
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

1.4.2 Adj + 死了 (extremely …)

0102.1 死了

Adj + 死了 exaggerates the feeling.

0102.2 D. 这个地区的冬天非常冷。

死了 is casual; a report uses 非常 or 十分.

0102.3 这个作业难死了。

Subject + Adj + 死了.

0102.4 True.

With 想 (miss), 死 exaggerates the longing.

0102.5 One possible response: 今天热死了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use it with friends and family; in an essay or a formal email, write 非常累 or 十分饿 instead.
- No 很 or 非常 in front, and nothing between the adjective and 死了: 累死了, not 很累死了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2 Adverbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

2.1 ■ 差不多 (almost / about the same)

2.1.1 Which one should I buy?

- You compare two phones in a shop. The prices, cameras and sizes are almost identical.
- **这两个手机差不多。** – "These two phones are about the same."

2.1.2 差不多 as an adjective: about the same

- **A 跟 B 差不多** / **A 和 B 差不多** = A and B are about the same: 我跟我哥哥差不多高.
- Alone after the subject, it can mean "nearly the same" or "nearly done": 作业写得差不多了.

我跟我哥哥差不多高。
wǒ gēn wǒ gē ge chà bu duō gāo
Word guide: 我 – I; 跟 – and; 我 – my; 哥哥 – older brother; 差不多 – about equally; 高 – tall.



2.1.3 差不多 as an adverb: almost, about

- Before a number or time: **差不多十点了。** – "It's almost ten." 差不多五十个人 – "about fifty people".
- Before 都 / 所有: **同学们差不多都来了。** – "Almost all the classmates have come."

同学们差不多都来了。
tóng xué men chà bu duō dōu lái le
Word guide: 同学们 – the classmates; 差不多 – almost; 都 – all; 来 – come.

2.1.4 Two jobs, two positions

- Before a number or verb phrase it means “almost”: 差不多三点. After the things compared it means “similar”: 价格差不多.
- It does not mean “nearly happened (but didn’t)”; that is 差点儿: 我差点儿迟到.

2.1.5 差不多就行了: good enough

- **差不多就行了。** – “That’s good enough.” A relaxed attitude to small details.
- **他是个“差不多先生”。** – said of someone who never bothers to be exact.

差不多就行了。
chà bu duō jiù xíng le
Word guide: 差不多 – close enough; 就 – then; 行 – OK.

2.1.6 Recap

- **A 跟 B 差不多** = about the same; **差不多 + number / 都** = almost, about.
- 差不多就行了 = good enough. “Nearly happened” is 差点儿.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.2 ■ 看来 (it seems / in one’s view)

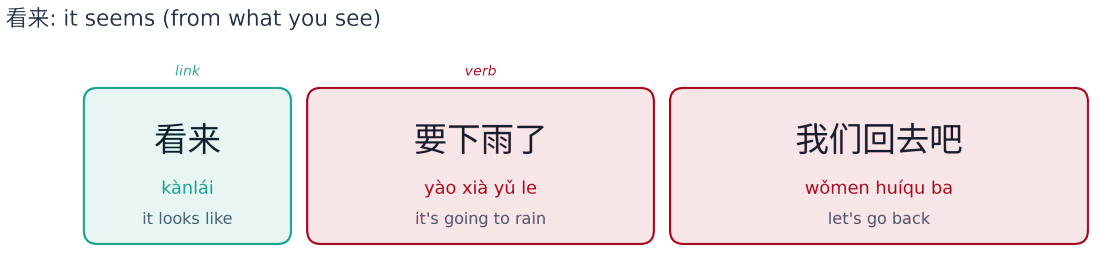
2.2.1 Dark clouds over the hills

- The sky turns grey and the wind picks up while you are hiking.
- **看来要下雨了，我们回去吧。** – “It looks like it’s going to rain; let’s head back.”

2.2.2 看来，… = judging from this

- **看来** draws a conclusion from what you have noticed: “it seems, it looks as if”.
- It usually starts the sentence, sometimes with a comma: 看来，他今天不会来了.

看来，他今天不会来了。
kàn lái tā jīn tiān bú huì lái le
Word guide: 看来 – it seems; 他 – he; 今天 – today; 不会 – won’t; 来 – come.



2.2.3 Evidence first, then 看来

- **他到现在还没回消息，看来是很忙。** – "He still hasn't replied – he must be busy."
- **你的中文进步这么快，看来每天都在练习。** – "Your Chinese is improving so fast; you must practise every day."

他还没回，看来很忙。
tā hái méi huí kàn lái hěn máng
Word guide: 他 – he; 还 – still; 没 – hasn't; 回 – replied; 看来 – it seems; 很 – very; 忙 – busy.

2.2.4 A conclusion, not a look

- 看来 reasons from evidence; for how something looks, use 看起来: 他看起来很累 – "He looks tired."
- Put 看来 before the conclusion, not after it: 看来他病了, not 他病了看来.

2.2.5 在我看来 = in my view

- **在我看来，这个办法不太好。** – "In my view, this approach isn't very good."
- 在 … 看来 gives someone's opinion; 看来 alone draws a conclusion from facts.

在我看来，这个办法不太好。
zài wǒ kàn lái zhè ge bàn fǎ bú tài hǎo
Word guide: 在 – in; 我 – my; 看来 – view; 这个 – this; 办法 – method; 不太 – not very; 好 – good.

2.2.6 Recap

- **看来，...** = it seems / it looks as if, a conclusion drawn from evidence.
- 看起来 = appearance; 在 … 看来 = in someone's view.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.3 ■ 正好 (just right / exactly)

2.3.1 Perfect timing

- You are about to phone your friend when your phone rings – it's her.
- **你来得正好，我正想给你打电话。** – "You've come at just the right moment; I was just about to call you."

2.3.2 正好 = just right

- As a description: **大小正好。** – "The size is just right." 时间正好 – "The timing is perfect."
- After a 得 complement: 你来得正好 – "You came at the right time."

这双鞋大小正好。
zhè shuāng xié dà xiǎo zhèng hǎo
Word guide: 这 – this; 双 – pair of; 鞋 – shoes; 大小 – size; 正好 – just right.



2.3.3 正好 + Verb = happen to

- **我正好也要去超市，一起走吧。** – "I happen to be going to the supermarket too; let's go together."
- It points to a lucky coincidence that fits the situation.

我正好也要去超市。
wǒ zhèng hǎo yě yào qù chāo shì
Word guide: 我 – I; 正好 – happen to; 也 – also; 要 – be going to; 去 – go to; 超市 – the supermarket.

2.3.4 Exactly an amount

- Before a number, 正好 = exactly: 正好一百块. For "about", use 左右 or 差不多: 一百块左右.
- Do not confuse it with 正在 (in the middle of doing): 我正在吃饭, not 我正好吃饭 for "I'm eating".

2.3.5 正好 versus 刚好 and 正在

- 刚好 is almost the same as 正好: 刚好十点.
- 正好 can also open a sentence to stress the lucky timing: 正好，他也在那儿 – "As it happened, he was there too."

一共正好一百块。
yí gòng zhèng hǎo yì bǎi kuài
Word guide: 一共 – in total; 正好 – exactly; 一百 – one hundred; 块 – yuan.

2.3.6 Recap

- **正好** = just right (大小正好), happen to (我正好也去), exactly (正好一百块).
- 刚好 is a close synonym; "about" is 左右, and "in the middle of doing" is 正在.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.4 ■ 只好 (have no choice but to)

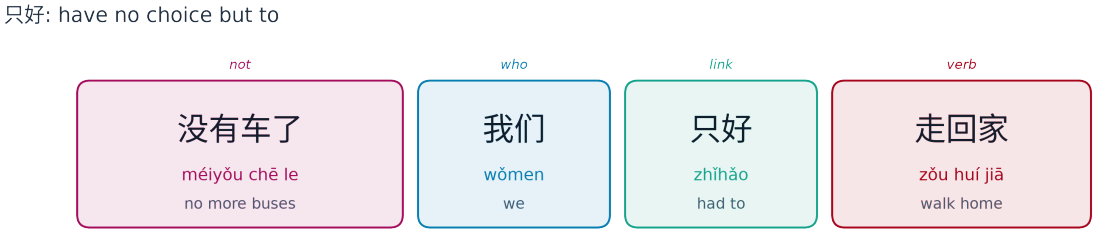
2.4.1 The last bus has gone

- You leave a party at midnight and the last bus left ten minutes ago. Taxis are all taken.
- **没有车了，我们只好走回家。** – "There's no transport left, so we have no choice but to walk home."

2.4.2 Obstacle, Subject + 只好 + Verb

- **只好** = "have no choice but to, can only": the action is the only option left.
- The reason comes first; 只好 goes after the subject of the result: 我只好 ….

下大雨了，比赛只好取消。
xià dà yǔ le bǐ sài zhǐ hǎo qǔ xiāo
Word guide: 下 – fall; 大雨 – heavy rain; 比赛 – the match; 只好 – had to; 取消 – be cancelled.



2.4.3 Accepting a second-best choice

- **商店关门了，我只好明天再来。** – "The shop was closed, so I'll have to come back tomorrow."
- **他不会做饭，只好每天吃方便面。** – "He can't cook, so he has to eat instant noodles every day."

商店关门了，我只好明天再来。
shāng diàn guān mén le wǒ zhǐ hǎo míng tiān zài lái
Word guide: 商店 – the shop; 关门 – closed; 我 – I; 只好 – had to; 明天 – tomorrow; 再 – again; 来 – come.

2.4.4 Reason first, 只好 after the subject

- Give the obstacle before 只好; 只好 alone with no reason sounds incomplete.
- Place 只好 after the subject: 我只好走路, not 只好我走路 in most speech.

2.4.5 只好 versus 不得不

- 不得不 is stronger and a little more formal: forced by duty or pressure: 他病了，我不得不替他上课.
- 只好 sounds more resigned: “Oh well, I’ll just have to …”.

他病了，我不得不替他上课。
tā bìng le wǒ bù dé bú tì tā shàng kè
Word guide: 他 – he; 病 – ill; 我 – I; 不得不 – had to; 替 – for; 他 – him; 上课 – teach.

2.4.6 Recap

- **Obstacle，Subject + 只好 + Verb** = have no choice but to.
- 只好 is resigned; 不得不 is stronger and more formal.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.5 ■ 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

2.5.1 It’s not as if I’m your servant

- Your roommate asks you, again, to wash his dishes.
- **我又不是你的服务员！** – “I’m not your waiter, you know!” 又 + 不 pushes back against an assumption.

2.5.2 又 + 不 / 没 = emphatic negation

- **又 + 不/没** strengthens a negative to reject what someone assumes: “it’s not as if …”.
- It is spoken, often a little impatient or defensive.

我又不是你的服务员。
wǒ yòu bú shì nǐ de fú wù yuán
Word guide: 我 – I; 又 – (it’s not as if); 不 – not; 是 – am; 你 – your; 服务员 – waiter.



2.5.3 Giving the reason behind a reaction

- **你别怪他，他又没做错。** – "Don't blame him – it's not like he did anything wrong."
- **怕什么？他又不会吃了你。** – "What are you afraid of? He's not going to eat you."

你别怪他，他又没做错。
nǐ bié guài tā tā yòu méi zuò cuò
Word guide: 你 – you; 别 – don't; 怪 – blame; 他 – him; 他 – he; 又 – (it's not as if); 没 – didn't; 做错 – do wrong.

2.5.4 Not "again"

- In 又不 / 又没, 又 is not "again"; it adds force to the denial.
- Keep it in speech; in neutral statements, plain 不 / 没 is enough: 他没做错.

2.5.5 又 + 不 versus 并 + 不

- 并不 denies a mistaken idea in a calmer, more written way: 这个问题并不难.
- 又不 is personal and emotional: 我又不是不想去 – "It's not that I don't want to go."

这个问题并不难。
zhè ge wèn tí bìng bù nán
Word guide: 这个 – this; 问题 – question; 并 – (actually); 不 – not; 难 – hard.

2.5.6 Recap

- **又 + 不 / 没** = it's not as if …, rejecting an assumption (spoken, emphatic).
- Not "again" here. Calmer written denial: 并不.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.6 ■ 可 + Adj (emphatic)

2.6.1 Harbin in January

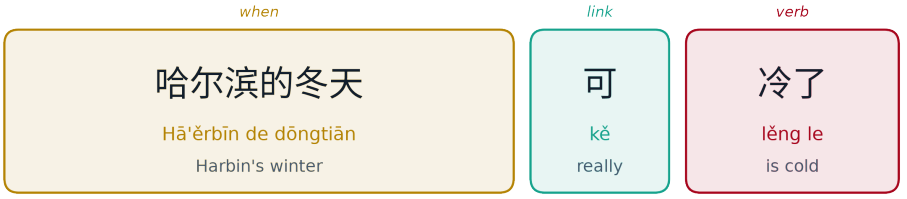
- A friend from the south asks whether Harbin in winter is really as cold as people say.
- **哈尔滨的冬天可冷了！** – "Harbin winters are really cold!"

2.6.2 可 + Adjective + 了

- **可 + Adj (+ 了 / 呢)** = "really, so" with emphasis, in speech: 可好了, 可贵了, 可有意思了.
- It often tells someone something they may not believe or know.

这个电影可有意思了。
zhè ge diàn yǐng kě yǒu yì si le
Word guide: 这个 – this; 电影 – film; 可 – really; 有意思 – interesting.

可 + adjective + 了: really (spoken emphasis)



2.6.3 Warnings and reminders

- **可 + 别 / 要**: **你可别忘了！** – "Don't you forget!" **你可要小心！** – "Do be careful!"
- The 可 adds urgency to the request.

你可别忘了！
nǐ kě bié wàng le
Word guide: 你 – you; 可 – (do); 别 – don't; 忘 – forget.

2.6.4 Spoken emphasis

- Use 可 … 了 in conversation; in writing choose 非常 or 十分.
- 可 + Adj usually needs 了 or 呢 at the end: 可冷了, not just 可冷.

2.6.5 可 as "but"

- At the start of a clause, 可 can be short for 可是: 我想去，可没时间 – "I'd like to go, but I don't have time."
- Before an adjective with 了, it is the emphatic "really".

我想去，可没时间。
wǒ xiǎng qù kě méi shí jiān
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – want to; 去 – go; 可 – but; 没 – haven't; 时间 – time.

2.6.6 Recap

- **可 + Adj + 了** = really …! (spoken emphasis); **可别 / 可要** = urgent warnings.
- At the start of a clause, 可 can mean "but".

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.7 ■ 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

2.7.1 So that's why

- Your colleague hasn't touched his lunch all week. Today you find out he has a toothache.
- **原来他牙疼，难怪不吃饭。** – "So he has toothache – no wonder he isn't eating."

2.7.2 原来 = so it turns out

- **原来** announces a discovery: the truth you have just found out explains something.
- It usually starts the clause: 原来是你！ – “Oh, it’s you!”

原来是你！
yuán lái shì nǐ
Word guide: 原来 – so it turns out; 是 – it’s; 你 – you.



2.7.3 Discovery and explanation

- **我以为他是老师，原来他是学生。** – “I thought he was a teacher, but it turns out he’s a student.”
- Often with 难怪 (no wonder): 原来下雪了，难怪这么冷。

原来下雪了，难怪这么冷。
yuán lái xià xuě le nán guài zhè me lěng
Word guide: 原来 – so it turns out; 下雪 – snow; 难怪 – no wonder; 这么 – so; 冷 – cold.

2.7.4 Two meanings

- At the start of a clause, 原来 reveals a discovery: 原来是这样！ – “So that’s how it is!”
- Before a noun (with 的) or describing the past, it means “original(ly)”: 原来的计划 – “the original plan”.

2.7.5 原来 = originally

- **他原来住在北京，后来搬到了上海。** – “He originally lived in Beijing; later he moved to Shanghai.”
- Here 原来 contrasts the earlier situation with a later change.

他原来住在北京。
tā yuán lái zhù zài Běi jīng
Word guide: 他 – he; 原来 – originally; 住 – live; 在 – in; 北京 – Beijing.

2.7.6 Recap

- **原来，...** = so it turns out (a discovery), often with 难怪 or after 我以为.
- **原来 + 的 + noun / earlier situation** = original, originally.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.8 ■ 差点 (almost / nearly)

2.8.1 That was close

- You slipped on the ice outside your building but grabbed the railing just in time.
- **我差点儿摔倒。** – "I nearly fell." It almost happened, but didn't.

2.8.2 差点 (儿) + Verb = nearly happened

- **差点 (儿) + Verb** = something almost happened but did not: 差点儿迟到, 差点儿忘了.
- It goes before the verb, after the subject; 了 often closes the sentence: 我差点儿忘了.

我差点儿忘了。
wǒ chà diǎnr wàng le
Word guide: 我 – I; 差点儿 – nearly; 忘 – forget.



2.8.3 With 没: the tricky part

- For something **unwanted**, 差点儿 and 差点儿没 mean the same: 差点儿摔倒 = 差点儿没摔倒 – "nearly fell (but didn't)".
- For something **wanted**, 没 flips the meaning: **我差点儿没赶上火车。** – "I nearly missed the train (but caught it)."

我差点儿没赶上火车。
wǒ chà diǎnr méi gǎn shàng huǒ chē
Word guide: 我 – I; 差点儿 – nearly; 没 – not; 赶上 – catch; 火车 – the train.

2.8.4 Wanted or unwanted?

- Wanted result: 差点儿考上 = almost passed (but failed); 差点儿没考上 = nearly failed (but passed).
- Unwanted result: 差点儿撞车 and 差点儿没撞车 both = nearly crashed (but didn't).

2.8.5 差点儿 versus 差不多

- 差点儿 = "nearly happened": 他差点儿哭了 – "He nearly cried."
- 差不多 = "about, almost (in amount)": 差不多十点了. They are not interchangeable.

他差点儿哭了。
tā chà diǎnr kū le
Word guide: 他 – he; 差点儿 – nearly; 哭 – cry.

2.8.6 Recap

- **差点儿 + Verb** = nearly (but didn't).
- Unwanted events: with or without 没, same meaning. Wanted events: 差点儿没 = nearly failed but succeeded.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.9 ■ 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

2.9.1 Not once in his life

- Your grandfather is eighty and proud of one thing about his health.
- **爷爷从来不抽烟。** – "Grandpa has never smoked."

2.9.2 从来 + 不 = never (habit or rule)

- **从来不 + Verb** = never, as a habit or personal rule: 他从来不喝酒, 我从来不迟到.
- 从来 goes before 不, after the subject.

他从来不喝酒。
tā cóng lái bù hē jiǔ
Word guide: 他 – he; 从来 – ever; 不 – not; 喝 – drink; 酒 – alcohol.



2.9.3 从来 + 没 (有) + Verb + 过 = never once

- **从来没 (有) + Verb + 过** = has never done (an experience): **我从来没去过西藏。** – "I've never been to Tibet."
- 过 highlights experience in these models; 没 itself does not require 过 after every predicate.

我从来没去过西藏。
wǒ cóng lái méi qù guo Xī zàng
Word guide: 我 – I; 从来 – ever; 没 – not; 去 – go; 过 – (experience); 西藏 – Tibet.

2.9.4 不 or 没, and keep 过

- Habit or choice → 从来不; past experience → 从来没 + V + 过.
- Use 过 to highlight experience in this model. It is not required after every 从来没; the predicate and intended meaning determine the complete phrase.

2.9.5 Adjectives and 从来都

- With adjectives: **他从来不着急。** – "He's never in a hurry."
- 从来都 in a positive sentence stresses "always, without exception" (他从来都是这样); for a plain "always", 一直 or 总是 is more usual: 他一直很努力.

他从来不着急。
tā cóng lái bù zháo jí
Word guide: 他 – he; 从来 – ever; 不 – not; 着急 – anxious.

2.9.6 Recap

- **从来不 + Verb/Adj** = never (habit, rule, character).
- **从来没 + Verb + 过** = have never (experience). For "always", use 一直 / 总是.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.10 ■ 结果 (as a result / in the end)

2.10.1 So much for the picnic

- You prepared sandwiches all morning for a picnic. At noon it started to pour.
- **我们准备了一上午，结果下雨了。** – "We spent the whole morning preparing, and in the end it rained."

2.10.2 ...，结果 ... = as a result, in the end

- **结果** introduces what finally happened, often a surprise or a disappointment.
- It starts the second clause: 他没复习，结果没考好.

他没复习，结果没考好。
tā méi fù xí jié guǒ méi kǎo hǎo
Word guide: 他 – he; 没 – didn't; 复习 – revise; 结果 – as a result; 没 – didn't; 考 – do the exam; 好 – well.



2.10.3 Cause and outcome

- **他昨天睡得很晚，结果今天迟到了。** – "He went to bed late yesterday, and as a result he was late today."
- The outcome can be good: 我试了一下，结果真的成功了。– "I gave it a try, and it actually worked."

我试了一下，结果真的成功了。
wǒ shì le yí xià jié guǒ zhēn de chéng gōng le
Word guide: 我 – I; 试 – try; 一下 – once; 结果 – in the end; 真的 – really; 成功 – succeed.

2.10.4 Past outcomes, not plans

- 结果 reports what actually happened, so it does not fit plans: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 如果下雨，结果我们不去.
- It starts the result clause: …，结果他迟到了, not …，他结果迟到了 in most speech.

2.10.5 结果 as a noun

- **考试的结果出来了。** – "The exam results are out." Here 结果 is a noun: result, outcome.
- 结果怎么样? – "How did it turn out?"

考试的结果出来了。
kǎo shì de jié guǒ chū lai le
Word guide: 考试 – exam; 结果 – results; 出来 – come out.

2.10.6 Recap

- **…，结果 …** = as a result / in the end, what actually happened (often unexpected).
- As a noun, 结果 = result. Plans and general causes use 所以.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.11 ■ 够 (enough / sufficient)

2.11.1 Is there enough food?

- You invited eight friends, but only cooked for four.
- **菜不够了，我再做两个吧。** – “There isn’t enough food; I’ll make two more dishes.”

2.11.2 Noun + 够 / 不够

- **够** = enough; it works like a verb or adjective: 钱够了, 时间不够, 人够不够?
- 够 also follows a noun: 我们人够了 – “We have enough people.”

时间不够了。
shí jiān bú gòu le
Word guide: 时间 – time; 不 – not; 够 – enough.



2.11.3 够 + Verb: enough to …

- **钱够买一张票。** – “The money is enough to buy one ticket.”
- With 不: **这些饭不够吃。** – “This rice isn’t enough (to eat).”

这些饭不够吃。
zhè xiē fàn bú gòu chī
Word guide: 这些 – this; 饭 – food; 不 – not; 够 – enough; 吃 – eat.

2.11.4 Position

- 够 normally follows the thing that is enough: 钱够了, 时间不够.
- “Enough to do” puts the verb after 够: 够吃, 够用, not 吃够 (that means “have had one’s fill”).

2.11.5 够 + Adj, 足够

- **够 + Adj** = “enough”: 这个房间够大 – “This room is big enough.” In an exclamation it means “really”: 你够厉害！ – “You’re really something!”
- 足够 is more formal: 我们有足够的时间 – “We have sufficient time.”

我们有足够的时间。
wǒ men yǒu zú gòu de shí jiān

Word guide: 我们 – we; 有 – have; 足够 – sufficient; 时间 – time.

2.11.6 Recap

- **X + 够 / 不够** = X is (not) enough; **够 + Verb** = enough to: 够吃, 够用.
- 够 + Adj = adj enough; 足够 (的) is formal "sufficient".

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.12 ■ 甚至 (even / to the point that)

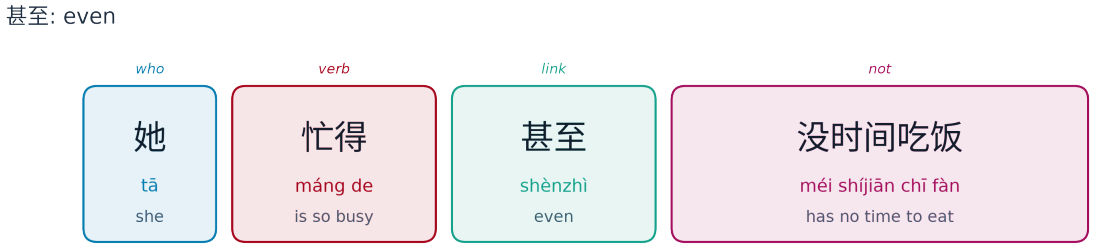
2.12.1 Too busy to eat

- Your sister has started a new job and works from morning till night.
- **她忙得甚至没时间吃饭。** – "She's so busy she doesn't even have time to eat."

2.12.2 甚至 + extreme point

- **甚至** = "even, so much that": it introduces the most extreme or surprising item.
- It goes before the part it highlights: 甚至没时间吃饭, 甚至连他也来了.

他学得很认真，甚至周末也学习。
tā xué de hěn rèn zhēn shèn zhì zhōu mò yě xué xí
Word guide: 他 – he; 学 – study; 很 – very; 认真 – hard; 甚至 – even; 周末 – at weekends; 也 – also; 学习 – study.



2.12.3 Building up a list

- **这首歌大人喜欢，孩子喜欢，甚至老人也喜欢。** – "Adults like this song, children like it, even old people like it."
- With 连 … 都/也: **他甚至连自己的名字都写错了。** – "He even wrote his own name wrong."

他甚至连自己的名字都写错了。
tā shèn zhì lián zì jǐ de míng zi dōu xiě cuò le
Word guide: 他 – he; 甚至 – even; 连 – even; 自己 – his own; 名字 – name; 都 – (even); 写错 – wrote wrong.

2.12.4 Last and strongest

- Put the 甚至 item last, as the strongest point; 甚至 does not introduce an ordinary item.
- 甚至 is more formal than 连 … 都 alone; the two often appear together.

2.12.5 甚至 versus 连 … 都

- 连 … 都 marks the surprising item: 连小孩都知道 – "Even children know."
- 甚至 can also join clauses and raise the stakes: 他不说话，甚至不看我 – "He won't speak, he won't even look at me."

连小孩都知道。
lián xiǎo hái dōu zhī dào
Word guide: 连 – even; 小孩 – children; 都 – (even); 知道 – know.

2.12.6 Recap

- **甚至 + extreme item** = even, so much that; usually the last, strongest point.
- Often with 连 … 都/也; it can also join clauses.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.13 ■ 还是 + Verb (had better)

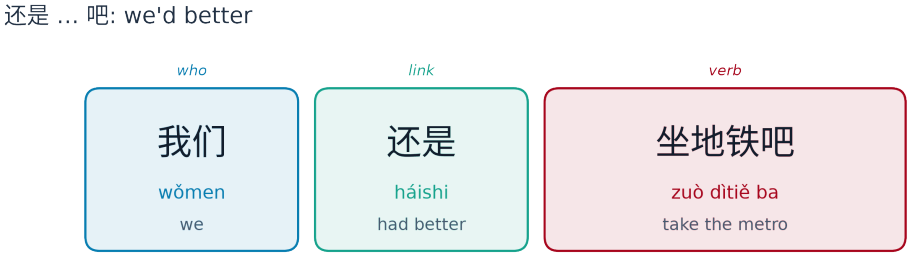
2.13.1 Traffic jam ahead

- You are about to drive to the airport, but the radio says the motorway is blocked.
- **我们还是坐地铁吧。** – "We'd better take the subway."

2.13.2 还是 + Verb (+ 吧) = had better

- **还是 + Verb** = "had better, it would be better to": a suggestion after weighing options.
- 吧 at the end makes it a gentle suggestion: 还是早点儿走吧.

太晚了，你还是回家吧。
tài wǎn le nǐ hái shi huí jiā ba
Word guide: 太 – too; 晚 – late; 你 – you; 还是 – had better; 回家 – go home.



2.13.3 After thinking it over

- **想了想，我还是不去了。** – "I thought it over, and I've decided not to go after all."
- 还是 shows you considered other options and came back to this one.

想了想，我还是不去了。
xiǎng le xiang wǒ hái shi bú qù le
Word guide: 想 – think; 想 – it over; 我 – I; 还是 – after all; 不 – not; 去 – go.

2.13.4 Suggestion, not a question

- In a question, 还是 = "or": 你去还是我去? Here it is a statement or suggestion, so no question mark.
- 还是 + 不 … 了 reverses a plan: 我还是不去了 – "I'm not going after all."

2.13.5 还是 versus 最好

- 最好 gives direct advice: 你最好早点儿去 – "You'd best go early."
- 还是 sounds like a decision after considering options: 还是早点儿去吧 – "Let's go early after all."

你最好早点儿去。
nǐ zuì hǎo zǎo diǎnr qù
Word guide: 你 – you; 最好 – had best; 早 – early; 点儿 – a bit; 去 – go.

2.13.6 Recap

- **还是 + Verb (+ 吧)** = had better / after all, a choice made after weighing options.
- Not the question 还是 ("or"); 最好 gives more direct advice.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.14 ■ 最好 (had best / it's best to)

2.14.1 Advice from the doctor

- You have a bad cold and ask the doctor what to do.
- **你最好多喝水，早点儿睡觉。** – "You'd best drink plenty of water and go to bed early."

2.14.2 最好 + Verb = had best

- **最好 + Verb** = "it's best to, you'd better": friendly but clear advice.
- It goes after the subject: 你最好 …; the negative is 最好别 / 最好不要.

你最好别喝咖啡。
nǐ zuì hǎo bié hē kā fēi
Word guide: 你 – you; 最好 – had best; 别 – not; 喝 – drink; 咖啡 – coffee.

最好: you'd best



2.14.3 Planning and warnings

- **去北京最好坐高铁。** – "The best way to get to Beijing is by high-speed train."
- **最好提前订票，不然买不到。** – "It's best to book in advance, or you won't get a ticket."

最好提前订票，不然买不到。
zuì hǎo tí qián dìng piào bù rán mǎi bu dào
Word guide: 最好 – best; 提前 – in advance; 订票 – book tickets; 不然 – otherwise; 买不到 – can't get them.

2.14.4 Negative: 最好别

- "You'd better not" = 最好别 / 最好不要: 最好别去, not 不最好去.
- 最好 + Verb gives advice; 最好的 + noun means "the best": 最好的朋友.

2.14.5 最好 versus 应该

- 应该 states what is right or expected: 你应该道歉 – "You should apologise."
- 最好 suggests the wisest option: 你最好先道歉 – "You'd best apologise first."

你应该道歉。
nǐ yīng gāi dào qiàn
Word guide: 你 – you; 应该 – should; 道歉 – apologise.

2.14.6 Recap

- **最好 + Verb** = it's best to / you'd better; negative **最好别 / 不要**.
- 最好的 + noun = the best ….; 应该 = should (duty).

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.15 ■ 不得不 (have no choice but to)

2.15.1 No other option

- Your friend has a high fever on the morning of an important exam.
- **他发烧了，不得不请假。** – "He has a fever, so he has no choice but to ask for leave."

2.15.2 Subject + 不得不 + Verb

- **不得不** = “have no choice but to, be forced to”: outside pressure makes the action necessary.
- It sits after the subject, before the verb: 我不得不承认, 我们不得不改计划.

我不得不承认，他说得对。
wǒ bù dé bù chéng rèn tā shuō de duì
Word guide: 我 – I; 不得不 – have to; 承认 – admit; 他 – he; 说 – says; 对 – right.



2.15.3 Rules, money, health

- **因为没钱，他不得不卖掉了车。** – “Because he had no money, he had to sell his car.”
- **飞机晚点了，我们不得不在机场住一晚。** – “The flight was delayed, so we had to spend a night at the airport.”

飞机晚点了，我们不得不在机场住一晚。
fēi jī wǎn diǎn le wǒ men bù dé bú zài jī chǎng zhù yì wǎn
Word guide: 飞机 – the flight; 晚点 – delayed; 我们 – we; 不得不 – had to; 在 – at; 机场 – the airport; 住 – stay; 一晚 – one night.

2.15.4 Not “must not”

- 不得不 is a double negative that means “must”: “cannot not do”. It never means “mustn’t”.
- “Mustn’t” is 不能 or 不可以: 这里不能停车.

2.15.5 不得不 versus 只好 and 必须

- 只好 is resigned and casual: 没车了，只好走回去.
- 必须 states a requirement: 你必须带护照. 不得不 stresses being forced by the situation.

你必须带护照。
nǐ bì xū dài hù zhào
Word guide: 你 – you; 必须 – must; 带 – bring; 护照 – your passport.

2.15.6 Recap

- **不得不 + Verb** = have no choice but to, forced by circumstances.
- It means "must", never "mustn't" (不能). 只好 = resigned; 必须 = a requirement.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.16 ■ 到底 (on earth / after all)

2.16.1 Are you coming or not?

- Your friend has changed his answer three times about tonight's dinner.
- **你到底来不来?** – "Are you coming or not, for goodness' sake?"

2.16.2 到底 in questions = on earth

- **到底** adds impatience or insistence to a question: "on earth, exactly".
- It goes before the question part: 到底去哪儿? 到底是谁? 到底怎么了?

你到底想说什么?
nǐ dào dǐ xiǎng shuō shén me
Word guide: 你 – you; 到底 – on earth; 想 – want; 说 – say; 什么 – what.



2.16.3 Question words and A-not-A, not 吗

- **这到底是怎么回事?** – "What on earth is going on?"
- **他到底同意不同意?** – "Does he agree or not?" 到底 needs a question word or an A-not-A form.

这到底是怎么回事?
zhè dào dǐ shì zěn me huí shì
Word guide: 这 – this; 到底 – on earth; 是 – is; 怎么 – how; 回事 – matter.

2.16.4 No 吗 with 到底

- Do not combine 到底 with 吗: 你到底去不去? , not 你到底去吗?
- Put 到底 before the question part, after the subject: 你到底在哪儿?

2.16.5 到底 in statements: after all, in the end

- **他到底是个孩子，别太生气。** – “He is, after all, just a child; don’t be too angry.”
- **我们等了很久，他到底还是来了。** – “We waited a long time, and in the end he did come.”

他到底是个孩子。
tā dào dǐ shì ge hái zi
Word guide: 他 – he; 到底 – after all; 是 – is; 个 – a; 孩子 – child.

2.16.6 Recap

- **到底 + question (QW or A-not-A)** = on earth / exactly; never with 吗.
- In statements: 到底是 … = after all; 到底还是 = in the end.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.17 ■ 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

2.17.1 The question everyone asks

- A news report on a mysterious light in the sky ends with one question.
- **那究竟是什么?** – “What exactly was it?”

2.17.2 究竟 = exactly, on earth (more formal)

- **究竟** works like 到底 in questions, but sounds more serious and written.
- It needs a question word or A-not-A: 究竟为什么? 究竟去不去?

问题究竟在哪儿?
wèn tí jiū jìng zài nǎr
Word guide: 问题 – the problem; 究竟 – exactly; 在 – lies; 哪儿 – where.



2.17.3 In reports and discussions

- **事故的原因究竟是什么?** – “What exactly caused the accident?”
- **我们究竟应该怎么做?** – “What exactly should we do?”

事故的原因究竟是什么?
shì gù de yuán yīn jiū jìng shì shén me

Word guide: 事故 – the accident's; 原因 – cause; 究竟 – exactly; 是 – is; 什么 – what.

2.17.4 Same rules as 到底

- No 吗: 你究竟同意不同意？, not 你究竟同意吗?
- Put 究竟 after the topic and before the question part: 原因究竟是什么?

2.17.5 究竟 versus 到底

- In questions they are interchangeable; 究竟 is more formal and calmer.
- 到底 has extra uses in statements (到底还是来了 – "in the end he came"); 究竟 rarely does.

他到底还是来了。
tā dào dǐ hái shi lái le
Word guide: 他 – he; 到底 – in the end; 还是 – still; 来 – come.

2.17.6 Recap

- **究竟 + question** = exactly / on earth, more formal than 到底.
- It needs a question word or A-not-A, never 吗; 到底 also works in statements.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.18 ■ 刚 + Verb (just did)

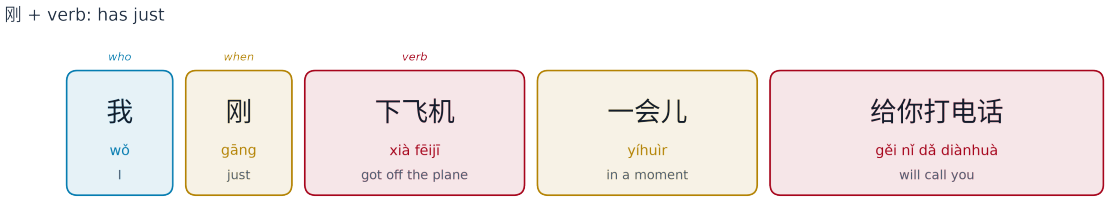
2.18.1 Just landed

- Your mum calls as you walk out of the arrivals hall.
- **我刚下飞机，一会儿给你打电话。** – "I've just got off the plane; I'll call you in a bit."

2.18.2 刚 + Verb = have just done

- **刚 + Verb** = something happened a short time ago: 刚到, 刚吃完, 刚起床.
- It sits right before the verb; the sentence usually has no 了: 我刚到.

我刚起床。
wǒ gāng qǐ chuáng
Word guide: 我 – I; 刚 – just; 起床 – get up.



2.18.3 刚 + Verb + duration: only recently

- **他刚来北京两个月。** – "He's only been in Beijing for two months."
- "Recent" depends on the speaker: two months can be 刚 for a new arrival.

他刚来北京两个月。
tā gāng lái Běi jīng liǎng gè yuè
Word guide: 他 – he; 刚 – just; 来 – come; 北京 – Beijing; 两个月 – two months.

2.18.4 Position and 了

- 刚 never starts the sentence: 我刚到, not 刚我到. (刚才 can start it.)
- A 刚 sentence usually needs no 了: 他刚走 already says it has happened.

2.18.5 刚 ... 就 ...: as soon as

- **我刚到家，就下雨了。** – "I'd only just got home when it started to rain."
- The second event follows immediately after the first.

我刚到家，就下雨了。
wǒ gāng dào jiā jiù xià yǔ le
Word guide: 我 – I; 刚 – just; 到 – arrive; 家 – home; 就 – then; 下雨 – rain.

2.18.6 Recap

- **刚 + Verb** = have just; **刚 + Verb + duration** = only recently. Aspectual 了 is possible when the sentence needs it.
- **刚 ... 就 ...** = no sooner … than. 刚 never starts the sentence.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.19 ■ 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

2.19.1 Step by step

- Your coach tells you not to rush learning a new dance.
- **别着急，一步一步地学。** – "Don't rush; learn it step by step."

2.19.2 一 + MW + 一 + MW (地) + Verb

- **一个一个, 一天一天, 一步一步** = one by one, day by day, step by step.
- Before a verb it often takes 地: 一个一个地检查 – "check them one by one".

请一个一个地进来。
qǐng yí gè yí gè de jìn lai
Word guide: 请 – please; 一个 – one; 一个 – by one; 进来 – come in.

一 + measure + 一 + measure: one by one



2.19.3 Gradual change

- **孩子一天一天地长大了。** – "The child grew up day by day."
- **问题要一个一个地解决。** – "The problems have to be solved one at a time."

孩子一天一天地长大了。
hái zi yì tiān yì tiān de zhǎng dà le
Word guide: 孩子 – the child; 一天 – day; 一天 – by day; 长大 – grow up.

2.19.4 Same measure word twice

- Use the same measure word in both halves: 一本一本, not 一本一个.
- Put the phrase before the verb: 一个一个地问, not 问一个一个.

2.19.5 Describing a scene

- Before a noun, it can describe many items in a row: **一座一座的高楼** – "tall building after tall building".
- Then it takes 的, not 地.

路边是一座一座的高楼。
lù biān shì yí zuò yí zuò de gāo lóu
Word guide: 路边 – by the road; 是 – are; 一座 – one; 一座 – after another; 高楼 – tall buildings.

2.19.6 Recap

- **一 + MW + 一 + MW + 地 + Verb** = one by one, step by step.
- Same MW twice; before a verb take 地, before a noun take 的.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.20 ■ 本来 (originally / at first)

2.20.1 Change of plan

- You were going to spend the holiday in Yunnan, but then your cousin invited you to Hainan.

- **我本来想去云南，后来去了海南。** – “I originally wanted to go to Yunnan, but in the end I went to Hainan.”

2.20.2 本来 = originally, at first

- **本来** describes the original plan or situation, usually before something changed.
- It goes after the subject (or at the start): 他本来是医生，后来当了作家.

他本来是医生，后来当了作家。
tā běn lái shì yī shēng hòu lái dāng le zuò jiā
Word guide: 他 – he; 本来 – originally; 是 – was; 医生 – a doctor; 后来 – later; 当 – became; 作家 – a writer.

本来 … 后来 …: the plan, then what happened



2.20.3 Plans that changed

- **我本来不想来，可是朋友一定要我来。** – “I didn’t really want to come, but my friend insisted.”
- 本来 often pairs with 后来, 可是 or 但是 to show the change.

我本来不想来。
wǒ běn lái bù xiǎng lái
Word guide: 我 – I; 本来 – originally; 不 – not; 想 – want to; 来 – come.

2.20.4 The second meaning: of course

- **本来就** = “should have been obvious, naturally”: 学生本来就应该学习 – “Students are, of course, supposed to study.”
- This 本来 has no change of plan; it means the thing was always true.

2.20.5 本来 versus 原来

- Both can mean “originally”: 本来 / 原来的计划.
- Only 原来 announces a discovery: 原来是你！ – “Oh, it’s you!” 本来 cannot do this.

原来是你!
yuán lái shì nǐ
Word guide: 原来 – so it turns out; 是 – it’s; 你 – you.

2.20.6 Recap

- **本来** = originally, before a change (often with 后来 / 可是).
- **本来就** = naturally, of course. Only 原来 can mean "so it turns out".

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.21 ■ 就 (only / just – small quantity)

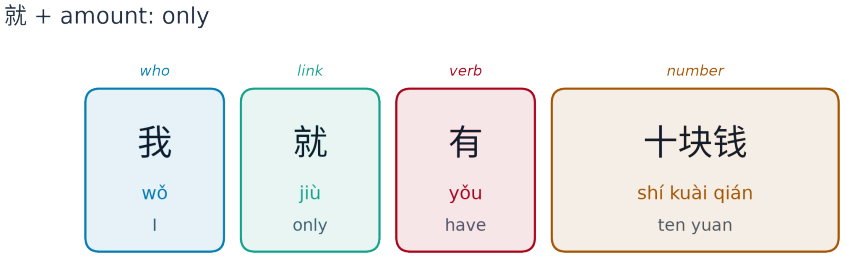
2.21.1 Just ten yuan

- Your friend asks to borrow money for lunch, but your wallet is almost empty.
- **我就有十块钱。** – "I've only got ten yuan." Here 就 means "only, just".

2.21.2 就 + number / noun = only

- **就 + amount** = "only that much": 就十块钱, 就两个人, 就一次.
- **就 + person** = "only (that person)": 就他一个人来了 – "Only he came."

就他一个人来了。
jiù tā yí gè rén lái le
Word guide: 就 – only; 他 – he; 一个人 – alone; 来 – came.



2.21.3 Spoken "only"

- **我就去过一次。** – "I've only been once."
- **就这么多了?** – "Is that all?" 就 often sounds casual and immediate.

我就去过一次。
wǒ jiù qù guo yí cì
Word guide: 我 – I; 就 – only; 去 – go; 过 – (experience); 一次 – once.

2.21.4 Which 就?

- Before a number or a person, 就 means "only". Between a time/condition and a verb it means "then / as early as": 六点就起床了.
- Stress helps in speech: 就 is said with emphasis when it means "only".

2.21.5 就 versus 只 and 才

- 只 is the neutral “only”: 我只有十块钱.
- 才 + number = only, with surprise that it is so little: 他才十岁. 就 is casual and matter-of-fact.

我只有十块钱。
wǒ zhǐ yǒu shí kuài qián
Word guide: 我 – I; 只 – only; 有 – have; 十 – ten; 块 – yuan; 钱 – money.

2.21.6 Recap

- **就 + number / person** = only, just (casual): 就十块, 就他一个人.
- 只 = neutral only; 才 = surprisingly few. Time + 就 + verb is a different 就 (early).

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.22 ■ 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

2.22.1 Before you leave

- Your friend is flying abroad tomorrow, and you remember how forgetful she is.
- **你千万别忘了带护照！** – “Whatever you do, don’t forget your passport!”

2.22.2 千万 + 别 / 不要 / 要

- **千万 + 别 / 不要** = “whatever you do, don’t …”: a strong warning.
- **千万要** = “be sure to”: 千万要小心.

千万要小心！
qiān wàn yào xiǎo xīn
Word guide: 千万 – whatever you do; 要 – be sure to; 小心 – be careful.



2.22.3 Advice to someone else

- **这件事千万不要告诉别人。** – “Whatever you do, don’t tell anyone about this.”
- **路上千万注意安全。** – “Do be careful on the road.”

这件事千万不要告诉别人。

zhè jiàn shì qiān wàn bú yào gào su bié rén
Word guide: 这件事 – this matter; 千万 – whatever you do; 不要 – don't; 告诉 – tell; 别人 – others.

2.22.4 Requests, not statements

- Use 千万 in advice or requests to someone, not to describe facts: 他千万没来 is wrong.
- 千万 goes before 别 / 不要 / 要, after the subject if there is one: 你千万别 ….

2.22.5 千万 versus 一定

- 一定要 = must, definitely: 你一定要来 – "You must come."
- 千万 is more urgent and mostly warns against something going wrong.

你一定要来。
nǐ yí dìng yào lái
Word guide: 你 – you; 一定 – definitely; 要 – must; 来 – come.

2.22.6 Recap

- **千万别 / 千万不要** = whatever you do, don't; **千万要** = be sure to.
- For requests and advice only; 一定要 = must.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.23 ■ 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably)

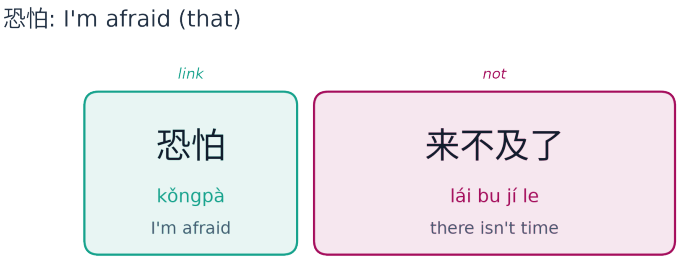
2.23.1 Running late

- You are stuck in traffic and the train leaves in ten minutes.
- **恐怕来不及了。** – "I'm afraid we won't make it."

2.23.2 恐怕 + guess = I'm afraid, probably

- **恐怕** introduces a guess, usually about something unwelcome: "I'm afraid …, probably …".
- It can start the sentence or follow the subject: 恐怕他不会来了 / 他恐怕不会来了.

他恐怕不会来了。
tā kǒng pà bú huì lái le
Word guide: 他 – he; 恐怕 – I'm afraid; 不会 – won't; 来 – come.



2.23.3 Softening bad news

- **这件事恐怕有点儿难。** – "I'm afraid this may be a bit difficult."
- **明天恐怕要下雨。** – "It'll probably rain tomorrow, I'm afraid."

明天恐怕要下雨。
míng tiān kǒng pà yào xià yǔ
Word guide: 明天 – tomorrow; 恐怕 – probably; 要 – will; 下雨 – rain.

2.23.4 A guess, not fear

- 恐怕 is a cautious prediction, not "be scared of": "I'm scared of dogs" is 我怕狗, not 我恐怕狗.
- It usually goes with unwelcome news; for a neutral guess, 可能 is better: 他可能在家.

2.23.5 恐怕 versus 可能

- 可能 = maybe, neutral: 他可能来, 也可能不来.
- 恐怕 = probably, with regret: 他恐怕来不了了 – "I'm afraid he can't come."

他可能在家。
tā kě néng zài jiā
Word guide: 他 – he; 可能 – maybe; 在 – be at; 家 – home.

2.23.6 Recap

- **恐怕 + guess** = I'm afraid / probably, softening bad news.
- Not "be afraid of" (怕); neutral guesses use 可能.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.24 ■ 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

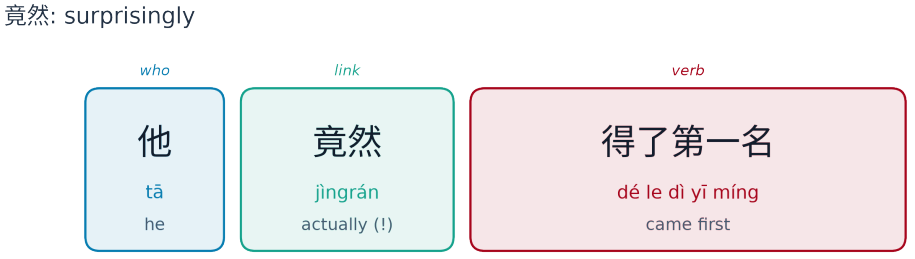
2.24.1 He actually did it

- Your quiet classmate, who never speaks in class, won the speech contest.
- **他竟然得了第一名！** – "He actually won first place!"

2.24.2 Subject + 竟然 + Verb

- **竟然** = “unexpectedly, to my surprise”: the event goes against what the speaker expected.
- It sits after the subject, before the verb: 他竟然忘了, 她竟然没来.

他竟然忘了我的生日。
tā jìng rán wàng le wǒ de shēng rì
Word guide: 他 – he; 竟然 – actually; 忘 – forget; 我 – my; 生日 – birthday.



2.24.3 Good or bad surprises

- Bad: **这么简单的题，我竟然做错了。** – “I actually got such an easy question wrong.”
- Good: **六岁的孩子竟然会说三种语言。** – “A six-year-old who can speak three languages!”

这么简单的题，我竟然做错了。
zhè me jiǎn dān de tí wǒ jìng rán zuò cuò le
Word guide: 这么 – such; 简单 – easy; 题 – question; 我 – I; 竟然 – actually; 做错 – got wrong.

2.24.4 Only for surprises

- Use 竟然 only when the outcome is unexpected; for a plain fact, leave it out.
- It is an adverb: 他竟然来了, not 竟然他来了 in most speech.

2.24.5 竟然 versus 居然 and 果然

- 居然 means the same and is common in speech: 他居然没来!
- 果然 is the opposite: “just as expected”: 天气预报说下雨，果然下雨了.

天气预报说下雨，果然下雨了。
tiān qì yù bào shuō xià yǔ guǒ rán xià yǔ le
Word guide: 天气 – weather; 预报 – forecast; 说 – said; 下雨 – rain; 果然 – sure enough; 下雨 – it rained.

2.24.6 Recap

- **竟然 / 居然 + Verb** = unexpectedly, actually (to my surprise).
- 果然 = just as expected, the opposite.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.25 ■ 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me ...?)

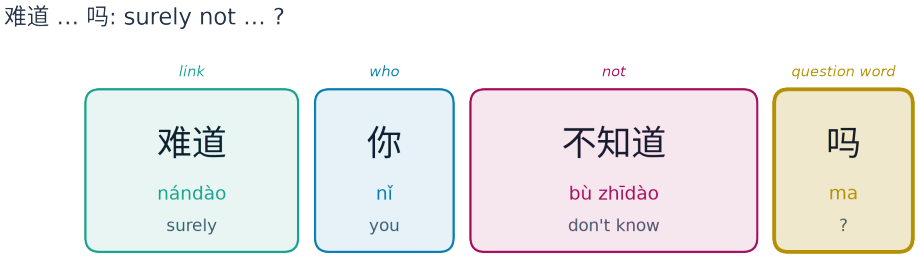
2.25.1 You can't be serious

- Your friend asks whether today's class is cancelled. The whole school knows it isn't.
- **难道你不知道吗?** – "Don't tell me you don't know?"

2.25.2 难道 ... (吗)? = rhetorical question

- **难道 ... 吗?** asks a question that expects the opposite answer: "Surely not … ?"
- A negative question expects "yes": 难道你不累吗? = "Surely you're tired."

难道你不累吗?
nán dào nǐ bú lèi ma
Word guide: 难道 – surely; 你 – you; 不 – not; 累 – tired.



2.25.3 Surprise or reproach

- **难道他忘了?** – "Can he really have forgotten?"
- **这么重要的事，难道你不应该先问我吗?** – "Shouldn't you have asked me first about something so important?"

难道他忘了?
nán dào tā wàng le
Word guide: 难道 – can it be; 他 – he; 忘 – forget.

2.25.4 The answer is built in

- 难道 does not ask for information; the speaker already believes the answer. Use it to challenge, not to ask.
- 难道 sits at the start or after the subject: 你难道不知道吗? is also correct.

2.25.5 Versus a normal question

- 你知道吗? – a real question: "Do you know?"
- 难道你不知道吗? – "You must know!" (and the speaker is surprised or annoyed).

你知道吗?
nǐ zhī dào ma
Word guide: 你 – you; 知道 – know.

2.25.6 Recap

- **难道 ... 吗?** = surely not … ? / don't tell me …, a rhetorical challenge.
- A negative 难道 question means the positive: 难道你不累吗 = you must be tired.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.26 ■ 先 ... ，再 ... (first ..., then ...)

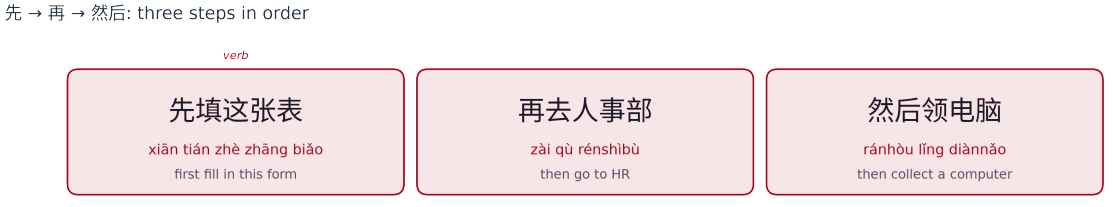
2.26.1 A three-step plan

- You are explaining to a new colleague how to set up their work account.
- **你先填这张表，再去人事部，然后领电脑。** – "First fill in this form, then go to HR, and after that collect your computer."

2.26.2 先 A，再 B (，然后 C)

- **先 ... 再 ...** orders steps that are still to come: plans, instructions, suggestions.
- Add 然后 or 最后 for longer sequences: 先 … 再 … 然后 … 最后 ….

我们先看看，再决定。
wǒ men xiān kàn kan zài jué dìng
Word guide: 我们 – we; 先 – first; 看看 – have a look; 再 – then; 决定 – decide.



2.26.3 先 ... 再说: deal with it later

- **先吃饭，别的事以后再说。** – "Let's eat first; we can talk about the rest later."
- 再说 here postpones a decision until the first step is done.

先吃饭，别的事以后再说。
xiān chī fàn bié de shì yǐ hòu zài shuō
Word guide: 先 – first; 吃饭 – eat; 别的 – other; 事 – things; 以后 – later; 再说 – deal with.

2.26.4 Future steps only

- For a past sequence, use 先 … 然后 … with 了: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市.
- 先 and 再 are adverbs: each comes after the subject, before its verb: 我先走，你再走.

2.26.5 再 = only then

- 再 can mean "not until (the first step is done)": **等雨停了再走。** – "Wait until the rain stops before you leave."
- 等 … 再 … is a very common pattern for "wait until … then …".

等雨停了再走。
děng yǔ tíng le zài zǒu
Word guide: 等 – wait until; 雨 – the rain; 停 – stop; 再 – then; 走 – leave.

2.26.6 Recap

- **先 A，再 B** = first A, then B, for future steps; extend with 然后 / 最后.
- 先 … 再说 = deal with it later; 等 … 再 … = wait until … then. Past sequences use 先 … 然后 … + 了.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.27 ■ 也都 (also all of them)

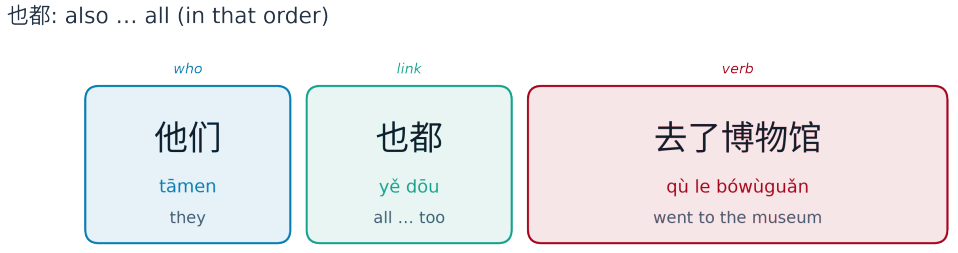
2.27.1 They came too

- Your class went to the museum; you find out the class next door all went as well.
- **他们也都去了博物馆。** – "They all went to the museum too."

2.27.2 Subject + 也 + 都 + Verb

- **也都** = "also all": 也 adds this group to another, 都 says every member of the group did it.
- The order is fixed: 也 before 都.

我们也都是学生。
wǒ men yě dōu shì xué sheng
Word guide: 我们 – we; 也 – also; 都 – all; 是 – are; 学生 – students.



2.27.3 Adding another group

- **我的朋友喜欢这首歌，我的父母也都喜欢。** – "My friends like this song, and my parents both like it too."
- With negatives: **他们也都不知道。** – "They don't know either (none of them)."

他们也都不知道。
tā men yě dōu bù zhī dào
Word guide: 他们 – they; 也 – also; 都 – all; 不 – not; 知道 – know.

2.27.4 也 first, then 都

- Say 也都, never 都也: 我们也都去, not 我们都也去.
- Both adverbs come after the subject and before the verb or 不 / 没.

2.27.5 也, 都 and 也都

- 我们都去 = all of us are going. 我们也去 = we are going too.
- **我们也都去。** = we are all going too: another group, and every one of us.

我们也都去。
wǒ men yě dōu qù
Word guide: 我们 – we; 也 – also; 都 – all; 去 – go.

2.27.6 Recap

- **也都 + Verb** = also all (another group, every member).
- Order: 也 before 都, both before the verb or negative.

Practise this pattern step by step.

2.28 ■ Practice without the models

2.28.1 差不多 (almost / about the same)

0201.1 Complete: "It's almost twelve o'clock." …… 十二点了。

0201.2 Which says "I almost missed the train (but caught it)"?

- A. 我跟火车差不多。
- B. 我赶上火车差不多。
- C. 我差不多没赶上火车。
- D. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

0201.3 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 这两件衣服差不多。
- 1. 差不多八点了。
- 1. 差不多就行了。
- A. The two items are about the same.
- B. That's good enough.
- C. It's almost eight.

0201.4 Build: “I’m about as tall as my older brother.”

Arrange all chunks: 我哥哥 / 差不多 / 我跟 / 高。

0201.5 You compare two phones in a shop. The prices, cameras and sizes are almost identical. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.2 看来 (it seems / in one’s view)

0202.1 The restaurant is empty at seven: “It looks like the food here isn’t very good.” …… 这儿的菜不太好吃。

0202.2 Which says “She looks very young”?

- A. 她看起来很年轻。
- B. 在她看来很年轻。
- C. 看来她很年轻。
- D. 她很年轻看来。

0202.3 Build: “In my view, this approach isn’t very good.”

Arrange all chunks: 这个办法 / 在我看来 / ， / 不太好。

0202.4 看来 usually comes after the conclusion it introduces.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0202.5 The sky turns grey and the wind picks up while you are hiking. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.3 正好 (just right / exactly)

0203.1 Complete: “I happen to have an umbrella; let’s share it.” 我 …… 带了伞，一起用吧。

0203.2 What does 一共正好五十块 mean?

- A. nearly fifty yuan
- B. about fifty yuan altogether
- C. exactly fifty yuan altogether
- D. more than fifty yuan

0203.3 Build: “You’ve come at just the right moment.”

Arrange all chunks: 正好。 / 来得 / 你

0203.4 正好 and 正在 both mean “in the middle of doing”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0203.5 You are about to phone your friend when your phone rings – it's her. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.4 只好 (have no choice but to)

0204.1 Complete: "The lift is broken, so we have to take the stairs." 电梯坏了，我们 …… 走楼梯。

0204.2 Which sentence is natural?

- A. 我明天再来只好。
- B. 商店关门了，只好我再来明天。
- C. 只好我明天再来。
- D. 商店关门了，我只好明天再来。

0204.3 Build: "He can't cook, so he has to eat instant noodles."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 只好 / 他不会做饭 / 吃方便面。

0204.4 不得不 sounds stronger than 只好.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0204.5 You leave a party at midnight and the last bus left ten minutes ago. Taxis are all taken. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.5 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

0205.1 What does 又 add in 我又不是小孩子！？

- A. emphasis rejecting an assumption
- B. a time in the past
- C. again
- D. both … and

0205.2 Complete: "Don't blame her – it's not like she was late." 别怪她，她 …… 没迟到。

0205.3 Build: "He's not going to eat you."

Arrange all chunks: 又 / 吃了你。/ 不会 / 他

0205.4 并不 is calmer and more written than 又不.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0205.5 Your roommate asks you, again, to wash his dishes. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.6 可 + Adj (emphatic)

0206.1 Complete: “That restaurant is really expensive!” 那家饭馆 …… 贵了!

0206.2 What does 你可别迟到！ mean?

- A. You can’t be late.
- B. Whatever you do, don’t be late!
- C. You may be late.
- D. You were late again.

0206.3 Build: “This film is really interesting.”

Arrange all chunks: 这个电影 / 了。/ 可 / 有意思

0206.4 In 我想去，可没时间, 可 means “but”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0206.5 A friend from the south asks whether Harbin in winter is really as cold as people say. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.7 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

0207.1 You hear a knock and open the door: “Oh, it’s you!” …… 是你!

0207.2 In 原来的计划是星期一出发, what does 原来 mean?

- A. original
- B. so it turns out
- C. no wonder
- D. suddenly

0207.3 Build: “So it snowed – no wonder it’s so cold.”

Arrange all chunks: 原来下雪了 / 难怪 / ， / 这么冷。

0207.4 我以为他是老师，原来他是学生 means he turned out to be a student.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0207.5 Your colleague hasn’t touched his lunch all week. Today you find out he has a toothache. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.8 差点 (almost / nearly)

0208.1 Complete: “I nearly forgot your birthday!” 我 …… 忘了你的生日!

0208.2 What does 他差点儿没考上大学 mean?

- A. He didn’t try.
- B. He nearly passed but failed.
- C. He nearly failed but got in.
- D. He passed easily.

0208.3 我差点儿摔倒 and 我差点儿没摔倒 mean the same.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0208.4 Build: “I nearly missed the train.”

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 差点儿 / 火车。 / 没赶上

0208.5 You slipped on the ice outside your building but grabbed the railing just in time. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.9 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

0209.1 Complete: “I’ve never eaten durian.” 我从来没吃 …… 榴莲。

0209.2 Which says “She never eats meat” (a personal rule)?

- A. 她从来没吃肉了。
- B. 她从来没吃过肉。
- C. 她从来不吃肉。
- D. 她不从来吃肉。

0209.3 Build: “He never drinks alcohol.”

Arrange all chunks: 不喝 / 他 / 从来 / 酒。

0209.4 从来 is the usual word for “always” in positive sentences.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0209.5 Your grandfather is eighty and proud of one thing about his health. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.10 结果 (as a result / in the end)

0210.1 Complete: “I didn’t bring an umbrella, and in the end I got soaked.” 我没带伞，…… 被雨淋湿了。

0210.2 In 比赛的结果是二比一, what is 结果?

- A. a noun meaning “result”
- B. an adverb meaning “finally”
- C. a verb meaning “finish”
- D. a conjunction meaning “so”

0210.3 Build: “He went to bed late, and as a result he was late today.”

Arrange all chunks: 他睡得很晚 / 结果 / 今天迟到了。/ ，

0210.4 结果 is used for a result that has actually happened.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0210.5 You prepared sandwiches all morning for a picnic. At noon it started to pour. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.11 够 (enough / sufficient)

0211.1 Complete: “Is there enough money?” 钱 …… 不够?

0211.2 Which says “This water isn’t enough to drink”?

- A. 这些水不够喝。
- B. 这些水不喝够。
- C. 这些水喝不够。
- D. 这些水够不喝。

0211.3 Build: “The money is enough to buy one ticket.”

Arrange all chunks: 钱 / 买一张票。/ 够

0211.4 足够 is more formal than 够.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0211.5 You invited eight friends, but only cooked for four. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.12 甚至 (even / to the point that)

0212.1 Complete: “He works so hard he even works at weekends.” 他工作很努力，…… 周末也工作。

0212.2 Where does 甚至 fit best? A 这个地方 B 夏天热，C 春天也热，D 冬天也不冷。

- A. A
- B. D
- C. B

- D. C

0212.3 Build: “He even wrote his own name wrong.”

Arrange all chunks: 写错了。 / 都 / 连自己的名字 / 他甚至

0212.4 甚至 can join two clauses, as in 他不说话，甚至不看我.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0212.5 Your sister has started a new job and works from morning till night. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.13 还是 + Verb (had better)

0213.1 Suggest: “It’s raining; we’d better stay home.” 下雨了，我们 …… 在家吧。

0213.2 In which sentence does 还是 mean “had better”?

- A. 我们还是打车吧。
- B. 你去还是不去?
- C. 他是老师还是学生?
- D. 你喝茶还是咖啡?

0213.3 Build: “I thought it over, and I’m not going after all.”

Arrange all chunks: 我还是 / 不去了。 / 想了想 / ，

0213.4 还是 here suggests the speaker considered other options.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0213.5 You are about to drive to the airport, but the radio says the motorway is blocked. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.14 最好 (had best / it’s best to)

0214.1 Advise: “You’d best bring a coat.” 你 …… 带一件外套。

0214.2 Which says “You’d better not drive tonight”?

- A. 你不最好今晚开车。
- B. 你今晚最好别开车。
- C. 你今晚别最好开车。
- D. 你今晚开车最好别。

0214.3 Build: “It’s best to book in advance.”

Arrange all chunks: 订票。 / 提前 / 最好

0214.4 In 他是我最好的朋友, 最好 means “had better”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0214.5 You have a bad cold and ask the doctor what to do. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.15 不得不 (have no choice but to)

0215.1 Complete: "The shop closed, so we had to find another one." 商店关门了，我们 …… 去找别的店。

0215.2 What does 我不得不走了 mean?

- A. I can't leave.
- B. I have to leave now.
- C. I don't want to leave.
- D. I mustn't leave.

0215.3 Build: "Because he had no money, he had to sell his car."

Arrange all chunks: 卖掉了车。 / 不得不 / ， 他 / 因为没钱

0215.4 不得不 can mean "must not".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0215.5 Your friend has a high fever on the morning of an important exam. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.16 到底 (on earth / after all)

0216.1 Complete: "What on earth happened?" …… 发生了什么?

0216.2 Which question is correct?

- A. 到底你喜欢她吗?
- B. 你到底喜欢不喜欢她?
- C. 你到底喜欢她吗?
- D. 你喜欢她到底吗?

0216.3 Build: "What on earth is going on?"

Arrange all chunks: 回事? / 到底 / 是怎么 / 这

0216.4 In 他到底是个孩子, 到底 means "after all".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0216.5 Your friend has changed his answer three times about tonight's dinner. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one

detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.17 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

0217.1 Complete a formal question: “What exactly is the reason?” 原因 …… 是什么?

0217.2 Which question is correct?

- A. 他究竟来吗?
- B. 他究竟来不来?
- C. 他来究竟吗?
- D. 究竟他来吗?

0217.3 Build: “What exactly should we do?”

Arrange all chunks: 怎么做? / 应该 / 我们 / 究竟

0217.4 究竟 sounds more formal than 到底.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0217.5 A news report on a mysterious light in the sky ends with one question. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.18 刚 + Verb (just did)

0218.1 Complete: “I’ve just finished eating.” 我 …… 吃完饭。

0218.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他刚走了了。
- B. 刚他走。
- C. 他刚走。
- D. 他走刚。

0218.3 Build: “I’d only just got home when it started to rain.”

Arrange all chunks: ， 就 / 我刚 / 到家 / 下雨了。

0218.4 他刚来北京两个月 means he has only been in Beijing for two months.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0218.5 Your mum calls as you walk out of the arrivals hall. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.19 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

0219.1 Complete: “Please come in one by one.” 请一个 …… 地进来。

0219.2 Which phrase is correct?

- A. 一本地一本看
- B. 一本一本地看
- C. 看一本一本
- D. 一本一个地看

0219.3 Build: “The problems have to be solved one at a time.”

Arrange all chunks: 问题 / 一个一个地 / 要 / 解决。

0219.4 一座一座的高楼 uses 的 because it comes before a noun.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0219.5 Your coach tells you not to rush learning a new dance. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.20 本来 (originally / at first)

0220.1 Complete: “I originally planned to leave on Monday.” 我 …… 打算星期一走。

0220.2 You open the door and find your old friend. Which fits? “_____ 是你！”

- A. 本来
- B. 原来
- C. 后来
- D. 从来

0220.3 Build: “I didn’t really want to come, but my friend insisted.”

Arrange all chunks: 不想来 / 我本来 / ， 可是 / 朋友一定要我来。

0220.4 In 学生本来就应该学习, 本来就 means “of course, naturally”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0220.5 You were going to spend the holiday in Yunnan, but then your cousin invited you to Hainan. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.21 就 (only / just – small quantity)

0221.1 Complete: “Only two people came.” …… 两个人来了。

0221.2 In 他六点就起床了, what does 就 mean?

- A. also
- B. only
- C. as early as
- D. not until

0221.3 Build: “I’ve only been once.”

Arrange all chunks: 一次。 / 我 / 去过 / 就

0221.4 他才十岁 sounds more surprised than 他就十岁.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0221.5 Your friend asks to borrow money for lunch, but your wallet is almost empty. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.22 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

0222.1 Warn: “Whatever you do, don’t be late!” 你 …… 别迟到！

0222.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他昨天千万没来。
- B. 千万你别去。
- C. 你别千万去。
- D. 你千万要注意身体。

0222.3 Build: “Whatever you do, don’t tell anyone about this.”

Arrange all chunks: 告诉别人。 / 这件事 / 不要 / 千万

0222.4 千万 is mainly used to warn against something going wrong.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0222.5 Your friend is flying abroad tomorrow, and you remember how forgetful she is. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.23 恐怕 (I’m afraid / probably)

0223.1 Soften the news: “I’m afraid the tickets are sold out.” …… 票已经卖完了。

0223.2 Which says “My little sister is scared of the dark”?

- A. 恐怕妹妹黑。
- B. 妹妹恐怕黑了。
- C. 妹妹怕黑。
- D. 妹妹恐怕黑。

0223.3 Build: “It’ll probably rain tomorrow, I’m afraid.”

Arrange all chunks: 下雨。 / 明天要 / 恐怕

0223.4 恐怕 usually goes with welcome news.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0223.5 You are stuck in traffic and the train leaves in ten minutes. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.24 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

0224.1 Complete: “She actually didn’t come!” 她 …… 没来!

0224.2 The forecast said it would snow, and it did. Which word fits? 天气预报说下雪，_____ 下雪了。

- A. 突然
- B. 居然
- C. 果然
- D. 竟然

0224.3 Build: “I actually got such an easy question wrong.”

Arrange all chunks: 做错了。 / ， 我 / 这么简单的题 / 竟然

0224.4 竟然 can introduce a good surprise as well as a bad one.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0224.5 Your quiet classmate, who never speaks in class, won the speech contest. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.25 难道 (rhetorical: don’t tell me ...?)

0225.1 Challenge: “Don’t tell me you’ve never heard of him?” …… 你没听说过他吗?

0225.2 What does 难道你不饿吗? suggest?

- A. The speaker is hungry.
- B. The speaker thinks you must be hungry.
- C. The speaker thinks you are not hungry.
- D. The speaker is asking for information.

0225.3 Build: “Can he really have forgotten?”

Arrange all chunks: 忘了 / 真的 / 吗? / 难道他

0225.4 难道 is used to ask for information you don't have.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0225.5 Your friend asks whether today's class is cancelled. The whole school knows it isn't. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.26 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

0226.1 Complete: "Let's have a look first, then decide." 我们先看看，…… 决定。

0226.2 Which says "Wait until the rain stops before you leave"?

- A. 再等雨停了走。
- B. 等雨停了又走。
- C. 雨停了等再走。
- D. 等雨停了再走。

0226.3 Build: "Let's eat first; we can talk about the rest later."

Arrange all chunks: 以后再说。 / 别的事 / 先吃饭 / ，

0226.4 先 … 再 … is the usual way to describe what you did yesterday.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0226.5 You are explaining to a new colleague how to set up their work account. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.28.27 也都 (also all of them)

0227.1 Complete: "We are all teachers too." 我们 …… 都是老师。

0227.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他们喜欢也都唱歌。
- B. 他们也都喜欢唱歌。
- C. 也他们都喜欢唱歌。
- D. 他们都也喜欢唱歌。

0227.3 Build: "They don't know either (none of them)."

Arrange all chunks: 不 / 也都 / 知道。 / 他们

0227.4 都也 and 也都 are both correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0227.5 Your class went to the museum; you find out the class next door all went as well. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain

briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

2.29 ■ Answers and explanations

2.29.1 差不多 (almost / about the same)

0201.1 差不多

差不多 + time = almost.

0201.2 D. 我差点儿没赶上火车。

Something that nearly happened takes 差点儿.

0201.3 1–A: 这两件衣服差不多。= The two items are about the same.; 2–C: 差不多八点了。= It's almost eight.; 3–B: 差不多就行了。= That's good enough.

The position of 差不多 decides its meaning.

0201.4 我跟我哥哥差不多高。

A 跟 B 差不多 + Adj.

0201.5 One possible response: 这两个手机差不多。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Before a number or verb phrase it means "almost": 差不多三点. After the things compared it means "similar": 价格差不多.
- It does not mean "nearly happened (but didn't)"; that is 差点儿: 我差点儿迟到.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.2 看来 (it seems / in one's view)

0202.1 看来

An empty restaurant is evidence; 看来 draws the conclusion.

0202.2 A. 她看起来很年轻。

Appearance takes 看起来; 看来 draws a conclusion.

0202.3 在我看来，这个办法不太好。

在 + person + 看来 introduces an opinion.

0202.4 False.

看来 comes before the conclusion.

0202.5 One possible response: 看来要下雨了，我们回去吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 看来 reasons from evidence; for how something looks, use 看起来: 他看起来很累 – "He looks tired."
- Put 看来 before the conclusion, not after it: 看来他病了, not 他病了看来.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.3 正好 (just right / exactly)

0203.1 正好

正好 + verb = happen to (a lucky fit).

0203.2 C. exactly fifty yuan altogether

Before a number, 正好 = exactly.

0203.3 你来得正好。

Verb + 得 + 正好.

0203.4 False.

Only 正在 means that; 正好 = just right / happen to / exactly.

0203.5 One possible response: 你来得正好，我正想给你打电话。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Before a number, 正好 = exactly: 正好一百块. For "about", use 左右 or 差不多: 一百块左右.
- Do not confuse it with 正在 (in the middle of doing): 我正在吃饭, not 我正好吃饭 for "I'm eating".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.4 只好 (have no choice but to)

0204.1 只好

Obstacle, then subject + 只好 + verb.

0204.2 D. 商店关门了，我只好明天再来。

Reason first, then subject + 只好 + verb.

0204.3 他不会做饭，只好吃方便面。

Reason + 只好 + verb phrase.

0204.4 True.

不得不 stresses being forced; 只好 sounds resigned.

0204.5 One possible response: 没有车了，我们只好走回家。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Give the obstacle before 只好; 只好 alone with no reason sounds incomplete.
- Place 只好 after the subject: 我只好走路, not 只好我走路 in most speech.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.5 又 + 不 / 没 (emphatic negation)

0205.1 A. emphasis rejecting an assumption

又 + 不 pushes back: "I'm not a child, you know!"

0205.2 又

又 + 没 for an emphatic denial.

0205.3 他又不会吃了你。

Subject + 又 + 不会 + verb.

0205.4 True.

又不 is emotional speech; 并不 states a correction calmly.

0205.5 One possible response: 我又不是你的服务员！

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- In 又不 / 又没, 又 is not "again"; it adds force to the denial.
- Keep it in speech; in neutral statements, plain 不 / 没 is enough: 他没做错.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.6 可 + Adj (emphatic)

0206.1 可

可 + Adj + 了 for spoken emphasis.

0206.2 B. Whatever you do, don't be late!

可 before 别 adds urgency: 你可别迟到！"Whatever you do, don't be late!" It is a strong warning, not a statement about what is possible.

0206.3 这个电影可有意思了。

可 + Adj + 了.

0206.4 True.

At the start of a clause, 可 can be short for 可是.

0206.5 One possible response: 哈尔滨的冬天可冷了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 可 … 了 in conversation; in writing choose 非常 or 十分.
- 可 + Adj usually needs 了 or 呢 at the end: 可冷了, not just 可冷.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.7 原来 (so it turns out / all along)

0207.1 原来

原来 announces a discovery.

0207.2 A. original

原来 + 的 + noun = the original plan.

0207.3 原来下雪了，难怪这么冷。

原来 + discovery, 难怪 + what it explains.

0207.4 True.

以为 marks the mistaken belief; 原来 the truth.

0207.5 One possible response: 原来他牙疼，难怪不吃饭。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- At the start of a clause, 原来 reveals a discovery: 原来是这样! – "So that's how it is!"
- Before a noun (with 的) or describing the past, it means "original(ly)": 原来的计划 – "the original plan".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.8 差点 (almost / nearly)

0208.1 差点儿

差点儿 + verb = it almost happened.

0208.2 C. He nearly failed but got in.

Getting in is wanted, so 差点儿没 = nearly failed (but succeeded).

0208.3 True.

Falling is unwanted, so both mean "I nearly fell (but didn't)".

0208.4 我差点儿没赶上火车。

差点儿没 + wanted result = nearly failed to.

0208.5 One possible response: 我差点儿摔倒。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Wanted result: 差点儿考上 = almost passed (but failed); 差点儿没考上 = nearly failed (but passed).
- Unwanted result: 差点儿撞车 and 差点儿没撞车 both = nearly crashed (but didn't).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.9 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

0209.1 过

从来没 + verb + 过 for an experience.

0209.2 C. 她从来不吃肉。

A habit or rule takes 从来不.

0209.3 他从来不喝酒。

Subject + 从来 + 不 + verb.

0209.4 False.

Use 一直 or 总是 for "always"; 从来 mostly appears with 不 / 没.

0209.5 One possible response: 爷爷从来不抽烟。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Habit or choice → 从来不; past experience → 从来没 + V + 过.

- Use 过 to highlight experience in this model. It is not required after every 从来没; the predicate and intended meaning determine the complete phrase.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.10 结果 (as a result / in the end)

0210.1 结果

结果 introduces what actually happened.

0210.2 A. a noun meaning "result"

After 的, 结果 is a noun, "result": 比赛的结果是二比一 "The result of the match was 2–1." At the start of a clause, 结果 can also mean "as a result, in the end".

0210.3 他睡得很晚，结果今天迟到了。

Cause, then 结果 + outcome.

0210.4 True.

It reports the real outcome, often a surprise.

0210.5 One possible response: 我们准备了一上午，结果下雨了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 结果 reports what actually happened, so it does not fit plans: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 如果下雨，结果我们不去.
- It starts the result clause: …，结果他迟到了, not …，他结果迟到了 in most speech.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.11 够 (enough / sufficient)

0211.1 够

够不够 asks whether it is enough.

0211.2 A. 这些水不够喝。

不够 + verb = not enough to.

0211.3 钱够买一张票。

Noun + 够 + verb phrase.

0211.4 True.

足够 (的) = sufficient, often in writing.

0211.5 One possible response: 菜不够了，我再做两个吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 够 normally follows the thing that is enough: 钱够了, 时间不够.
- "Enough to do" puts the verb after 够: 够吃, 够用, not 吃够 (that means "have had one's fill").
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.12 甚至 (even / to the point that)

0212.1 甚至

甚至 introduces the extreme point.

0212.2 B. D

甚至 goes before the last, strongest item: 甚至冬天也不冷.

0212.3 他甚至连自己的名字都写错了。

甚至 + 连 … 都 + verb.

0212.4 True.

It raises the second clause to a stronger point.

0212.5 One possible response: 她忙得甚至没时间吃饭。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put the 甚至 item last, as the strongest point; 甚至 does not introduce an ordinary item.
- 甚至 is more formal than 连 … 都 alone; the two often appear together.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.13 还是 + Verb (had better)

0213.1 还是

还是 + verb + 吧 = had better.

0213.2 A. 我们还是打车吧。

The others are choice questions where 还是 = or.

0213.3 想了想，我还是不去了。

Reflection, then subject + 还是 + decision.

0213.4 True.

It marks a choice reached after weighing alternatives.

0213.5 One possible response: 我们还是坐地铁吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- In a question, 还是 = "or": 你去还是我去? Here it is a statement or suggestion, so no question mark.
- 还是 + 不 … 了 reverses a plan: 我还是不去了 – "I'm not going after all."
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.14 最好 (had best / it's best to)

0214.1 最好

最好 + verb = had best.

0214.2 B. 你今晚最好别开车。

Time + 最好别 + verb; 不最好 is wrong.

0214.3 最好提前订票。

最好 + verb phrase.

0214.4 False.

False. Before 的 + noun, 最好 is "best": 我最好的朋友 "my best friend". Only before a verb does 最好 mean "had better": 你最好早点儿走.

0214.5 One possible response: 你最好多喝水，早点儿睡觉。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "You'd better not" = 最好别 / 最好不要: 最好别去, not 不最好去.
- 最好 + Verb gives advice; 最好的 + noun means "the best": 最好的朋友.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.15 不得不 (have no choice but to)

0215.1 不得不

Forced by the situation: 不得不 (or 只好).

0215.2 B. I have to leave now.

不得不 = must, forced by the situation.

0215.3 因为没钱，他不得不卖掉了车。

Reason, then subject + 不得不 + verb.

0215.4 False.

It means “have no choice but to”; “must not” is 不能.

0215.5 One possible response: 他发烧了，不得不请假。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不得不 is a double negative that means “must”: “cannot not do”. It never means “mustn’t”.
- “Mustn’t” is 不能 or 不可以: 这里不能停车.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.16 到底 (on earth / after all)

0216.1 到底

到底 + question word.

0216.2 B. 你到底喜欢不喜欢她?

到底 takes an A-not-A or a question word, never 吗.

0216.3 这到底是怎么回事?

Subject + 到底 + question.

0216.4 True.

In statements, 到底是 = after all.

0216.5 One possible response: 你到底来不来?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not combine 到底 with 吗: 你到底去不去？, not 你到底去吗?
- Put 到底 before the question part, after the subject: 你到底在哪儿?
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.17 究竟 (exactly / on earth)

0217.1 究竟

究竟 + question word.

0217.2 B. 他究竟来不来?

究竟 needs A-not-A or a question word.

0217.3 我们究竟应该怎么做?

Subject + 究竟 + question.

0217.4 True.

It suits reports and serious discussion.

0217.5 One possible response: 那究竟是什么?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 吗: 你究竟同意不同意? , not 你究竟同意吗?
- Put 究竟 after the topic and before the question part: 原因究竟是什么?
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.18 刚 + Verb (just did)

0218.1 刚

刚 + verb = have just done.

0218.2 C. 他刚走。

他刚走 is right: 刚 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject and before the verb. It cannot start the sentence or follow the verb, and 了 is not doubled.

0218.3 我刚到家，就下雨了。

刚 + event 1, 就 + event 2.

0218.4 True.

刚 + verb + duration = only recently.

0218.5 One possible response: 我刚下飞机，一会儿给你打电话。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 刚 never starts the sentence: 我刚到, not 刚我到. (刚才 can start it.)
- A 刚 sentence usually needs no 了: 他刚走 already says it has happened.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.19 一 + MW + 一 + MW (one by one)

0219.1 一个

一 + MW + 一 + MW.

0219.2 B. 一本一本地看

Same MW twice, then 地 + verb.

0219.3 问题要一个一个地解决。

Topic + 要 + 一个一个地 + verb.

0219.4 True.

Before a noun the phrase takes 的; before a verb, 地.

0219.5 One possible response: 别着急，一步一步地学。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use the same measure word in both halves: 一本一本, not 一本一个.
- Put the phrase before the verb: 一个一个地问, not 问一个一个.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.20 本来 (originally / at first)

0220.1 本来

本来 = originally (before a change).

0220.2 B. 原来

A discovery takes 原来; 本来 cannot announce one.

0220.3 我本来不想来，可是朋友一定要我来。

本来 + original wish, 可是 + change.

0220.4 True.

本来就 states something that was always true.

0220.5 One possible response: 我本来想去云南，后来去了海南。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- **本来就** = "should have been obvious, naturally": 学生本来就应该学习 – "Students are, of course, supposed to study."
- This 本来 has no change of plan; it means the thing was always true.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.21 就 (only / just – small quantity)

0221.1 就

就 + number = only.

0221.2 C. as early as

Time + 就 + verb = as early as; this is not the "only" 就.

0221.3 我就去过一次。

Subject + 就 + verb + 过 + 一次.

0221.4 True.

才 + number adds surprise that it is so little.

0221.5 One possible response: 我就有十块钱。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Before a number or a person, 就 means "only". Between a time/condition and a verb it means "then / as early as": 六点就起床了.
- Stress helps in speech: 就 is said with emphasis when it means "only".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.22 千万 (be sure to / whatever you do)

0222.1 千万

千万 + 别 = a strong warning.

0222.2 D. 你千万要注意身体。

千万 belongs in advice; it goes after the subject, before 要 / 别.

0222.3 这件事千万不要告诉别人。

Topic + 千万不要 + verb.

0222.4 True.

It is an urgent warning or reminder.

0222.5 One possible response: 你千万别忘了带护照!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 千万 in advice or requests to someone, not to describe facts: 他千万没来 is wrong.
- 千万 goes before 别 / 不要 / 要, after the subject if there is one: 你千万别 ….
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.23 恐怕 (I'm afraid / probably)

0223.1 恐怕

恐怕 introduces an unwelcome guess.

0223.2 C. 妹妹怕黑。

Being scared of something is 怕; 恐怕 is a cautious guess.

0223.3 恐怕明天要下雨。

恐怕 can start the sentence, before the prediction.

0223.4 False.

It usually softens unwelcome news; 可能 is neutral.

0223.5 One possible response: 恐怕来不及了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 恐怕 is a cautious prediction, not "be scared of": "I'm scared of dogs" is 我怕狗, not 我恐怕狗.
- It usually goes with unwelcome news; for a neutral guess, 可能 is better: 他可能在家.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.24 竟然 (actually / unexpectedly)

0224.1 竟然

竟然 marks a surprise.

0224.2 C. 果然

果然 means "just as expected": the forecast said snow, and it did snow. 竟然 and 居然 mark surprise, and 突然 means "suddenly".

0224.3 这么简单的题，我竟然做错了。

Subject + 竟然 + verb.

0224.4 True.

It marks any outcome that goes against expectation.

0224.5 One possible response: 他竟然得了第一名！

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 竟然 only when the outcome is unexpected; for a plain fact, leave it out.
- It is an adverb: 他竟然来了, not 竟然他来了 in most speech.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.25 难道 (rhetorical: don't tell me ...?)

0225.1 难道

难道 … 吗 makes a rhetorical question.

0225.2 B. The speaker thinks you must be hungry.

A negative 难道 question implies the positive.

0225.3 难道他真的忘了吗?

难道 + statement + 吗?

0225.4 False.

It challenges; the speaker already believes the answer.

0225.5 One possible response: 难道你不知道吗?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 难道 does not ask for information; the speaker already believes the answer. Use it to challenge, not to ask.
- 难道 sits at the start or after the subject: 你难道不知道吗? is also correct.

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.26 先 … ，再 … (first …, then …)

0226.1 再

先 A，再 B for future steps.

0226.2 D. 等雨停了再走。

等 + condition + 再 + action.

0226.3 先吃饭，别的事以后再说。

先 + step, 以后再说 postpones the rest.

0226.4 False.

Past sequences use 先 … 然后 … with 了.

0226.5 One possible response: 你先填这张表，再去人事部，然后领电脑。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- For a past sequence, use 先 … 然后 … with 了: 我先去了银行，然后去了超市.
- 先 and 再 are adverbs: each comes after the subject, before its verb: 我先走，你再走.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

2.29.27 也都 (also all of them)

0227.1 也

也 comes before 都.

0227.2 B. 他们也都喜欢唱歌。

他们也都喜欢唱歌 is right: when 也 and 都 are both used, 也 comes first, and both go after the subject and before the verb.

0227.3 他们也都不知道。

也都 + 不 + verb.

0227.4 False.

False. When both appear, the order is 也都: 他们也都来了 “They all came too.” 都也 is not used.

0227.5 One possible response: 他们也都去了博物馆。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say 也都, never 都也: 我们也都去, not 我们都也去.
- Both adverbs come after the subject and before the verb or 不 / 没.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

3 Adverbs with Adjectives

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

3.1 ■ 挺 + adjective (+ 的) – quite / pretty

挺 (tǐng) intensifies an assessment in everyday conversation. The assessment can be positive or negative. It does not have a fixed strength relative to 很: context and emphasis matter.

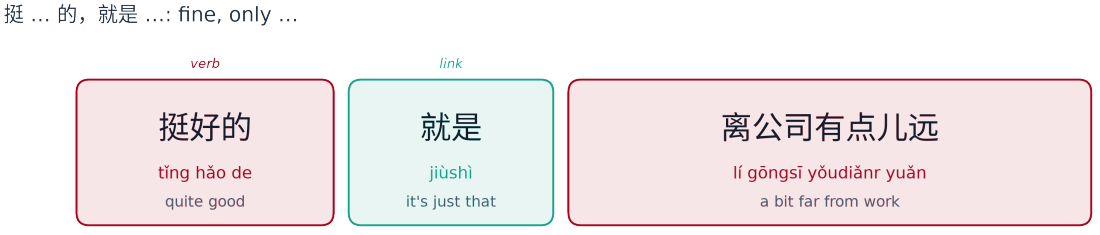
Structure: 挺 + Adjective (+ 的)

这个菜挺好吃的。
zhè ge cài tǐng hǎo chī de
Word guide: 这个 – this; 菜 – dish; 挺 – quite; 好吃 – tasty.
This dish is quite tasty.

最近大家都挺忙的。
zuì jìn dà jiā dōu tǐng máng de
Word guide: 最近 – recently; 大家 – everyone; 都 – all; 挺 – quite; 忙 – busy.
Everyone has been quite busy lately.

的 is common, but optional in many expressions. Both 挺好的 and 挺好 are natural. 挺有意思 means "quite interesting"; it can also end with 的. Do not mark an answer wrong simply because 的 is absent.

Use it in a situation: Someone asks how your new course is going. You might answer 挺好的 ("Quite well"). If an item costs more than you expected, 这个挺贵的 means "This is quite expensive".



> **Check the distinction:** Does 挺 guarantee praise? No. 挺麻烦的 means "quite troublesome". Does every 挺 phrase need 的? No. 挺好 is a natural short assessment.

Try it: Describe a course, a dish, or a journey using 挺. Then change the assessment from positive to negative. A possible pair is 这个菜挺好吃的 / 这个菜挺贵的。

3.2 ■ Practice without the models

3.2.1 挺 + Adj + 的 (quite / rather)

0301.1 Casually: “The food here is pretty good.” 这儿的菜 …… 好吃的。

0301.2 Which says “It isn’t very expensive”?

- A. 不挺太贵。
- B. 不挺贵的。
- C. 不太贵。
- D. 挺不太贵。

0301.3 Build: “I quite like this city.”

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 挺喜欢 / 的。/ 这个城市

0301.4 挺 is more casual than 很.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0301.5 A friend asks about your new apartment. It is nice, though not amazing. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

3.3 ■ Answers and explanations

3.3.1 挺 + Adj + 的 (quite / rather)

0301.1 挺

挺 + Adj + 的.

0301.2 C. 不太贵。

The negative of "quite" is 不太.

0301.3 我挺喜欢这个城市的。

挺 + feeling verb + object + 的.

0301.4 True.

挺 belongs to friendly conversation.

0301.5 One possible response: 挺好的，就是离公司有点儿远。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "Not very" is 不太 or 不怎么, not 不挺: 不太好, not 不挺好. (挺不错 / 挺不好 put 不 after 挺.)
- 挺 is spoken; in an essay prefer 比较 or 很.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4 Auxiliary Words

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

4.1 ■ Noun, Noun + 什么的 (...and so on)

4.1.1 A shopping list

- Your roommate asks what to buy for the weekend barbecue.
- **买点儿肉、蔬菜、饮料什么的。** – "Buy some meat, vegetables, drinks, that kind of thing."

4.1.2 Noun, Noun + 什么的

- **A、B (、C) + 什么的** = "… and so on, … and things like that", in casual speech.
- It closes an open list; one or more examples come before it.

我喜欢看书、听音乐什么的。
wǒ xǐ huan kàn shū tīng yīn yuè shén me de
Word guide: 我 – I; 喜欢 – like; 看书 – reading; 听 – listening to; 音乐 – music; 什么的 – and so on.



4.1.3 Activities too

- Verb phrases work: **周末我常常打球、爬山什么的。** – "At weekends I often play ball, go hiking, things like that."
- The list is only examples; the speaker is not giving every item.

周末我常常打球、爬山什么的。
zhōu mò wǒ cháng cháng dǎ qiú pá shān shén me de
Word guide: 周末 – at weekends; 我 – I; 常常 – often; 打球 – play ball; 爬山 – go hiking; 什么的 – and so on.

4.1.4 Spoken, and not a question

- 什么的 here is not "what"; it ends a list, so no question mark.
- In writing use 等 instead: 北京、上海等城市.

4.1.5 什么的 versus 等

- 什么的 is casual and goes at the end of a phrase.
- 等 is formal and can come before a noun that sums up the list: 苹果、香蕉等水果 – “apples, bananas and other fruit”.

苹果、香蕉等水果。
píng guǒ xiāng jiāo děng shuǐ guǒ
Word guide: 苹果 – apples; 香蕉 – bananas; 等 – and other; 水果 – fruit.

4.1.6 Recap

- **A、B + 什么的** = A, B and so on (casual, open list).
- Writing uses 等 (等 + summary noun).

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.2 ■ … 等 / 等等 (etc.)

4.2.1 In a news report

- You read about which Chinese cities have the most visitors.
- **北京、上海、西安等城市都很受欢迎。** – “Cities such as Beijing, Shanghai and Xi’an are all very popular.”

4.2.2 A、B + 等 (+ summary noun)

- **等** = “etc., and so on” in writing. It follows the list and can be followed by a noun that sums it up.
- 等等 is a stronger “and so on and so forth”, usually at the very end.

我买了苹果、香蕉等水果。
wǒ mǎi le píng guǒ xiāng jiāo děng shuǐ guǒ
Word guide: 我 – I; 买 – bought; 苹果 – apples; 香蕉 – bananas; 等 – and other; 水果 – fruit.



4.2.3 Open list or closed list

- Open: **中国有很多传统节日，比如春节、中秋节等等。** – “China has many traditional festivals, such as the Spring Festival, the Mid-Autumn Festival and so on.”

- Closed, with a number: **北京、上海、广州等三个城市** – "the three cities Beijing, Shanghai and Guangzhou". The number shows the list is complete.

北京、上海、广州等三个城市。
Běi jīng Shàng hǎi Guǎng zhōu děng sān gè chéng shì
Word guide: 北京 – Beijing; 上海 – Shanghai; 广州 – Guangzhou; 等 – (these); 三个 – three; 城市 – cities.

4.2.4 Written style

- 等 is formal; in chat, 什么的 sounds more natural.
- With a number after 等, the list is complete: 等三个城市 means exactly those three.

4.2.5 等 the verb

- 等 also means "wait": 等一下 – "wait a moment". In a list it means "etc.".
- Position tells you which: after a list of nouns it is "etc.".

请等一下。
qǐng děng yí xià
Word guide: 请 – please; 等 – wait; 一下 – a moment.

4.2.6 Recap

- **A、B + 等 (+ noun)** = A, B and so on (written); 等等 = and so on and so forth.
- 等 + number = a complete list; casual speech uses 什么的.

Practise this pattern step by step.

4.3 ■ Practice without the models

4.3.1 Noun, Noun + 什么的 (...and so on)

0401.1 Complete casually: "I like reading, music and so on." 我喜欢看书、听音乐……。

0401.2 Which suits a written report?

- A. 他去过什么的北京、上海。
- B. 他去过北京、上海什么的城市。
- C. 他去过北京、上海什么的。
- D. 他去过北京、上海等城市。

0401.3 Build: "At weekends I often play ball, go hiking, things like that."

Arrange all chunks: 打球、 / 爬山 / 什么的。 / 周末我常常

0401.4 A sentence ending in 什么的 needs a question mark.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0401.5 Your roommate asks what to buy for the weekend barbecue. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and

try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.3.2 ... 等 / 等等 (etc.)

0402.1 Complete (written): “apples, bananas and other fruit” 苹果、香蕉 …… 水果

0402.2 What does 北京、上海、广州等三个城市 tell you?

- A. There are more than three cities.
- B. The list is incomplete.
- C. The speaker is waiting for three cities.
- D. There are exactly these three cities.

0402.3 Build: “Cities such as Beijing and Shanghai are very popular.”

Arrange all chunks: 受欢迎。 / 北京、上海 / 等城市 / 都很

0402.4 等 is more formal than 什么的.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0402.5 You read about which Chinese cities have the most visitors. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

4.4 ■ Answers and explanations

4.4.1 Noun, Noun + 什么的 (...and so on)

0401.1 什么的

什么的 ends an open list.

0401.2 D. 他去过北京、上海等城市。

Writing uses 等 + summary noun.

0401.3 周末我常常打球、爬山什么的。

List + 什么的.

0401.4 False.

Here 什么的 means "and so on"; it is a statement.

0401.5 One possible response: 买点儿肉、蔬菜、饮料什么的。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 什么的 here is not "what"; it ends a list, so no question mark.
- In writing use 等 instead: 北京、上海等城市.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

4.4.2 ... 等 / 等等 (etc.)

0402.1 等

List + 等 + summary noun.

0402.2 D. There are exactly these three cities.

A number after 等 closes the list.

0402.3 北京、上海等城市都很受欢迎。

List + 等 + noun + comment.

0402.4 True.

等 suits writing; 什么的 suits chat.

0402.5 One possible response: 北京、上海、西安等城市都很受欢迎。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 等 is formal; in chat, 什么的 sounds more natural.
- With a number after 等, the list is complete: 等三个城市 means exactly those three.

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5 Conjunctions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

5.1 ■ 不过 (a softer “but”)

5.1.1 Good, with one small problem

- A friend asks about the hotel you stayed in. It was clean and friendly, but noisy at night.
- **房间很干净，不过晚上有点儿吵。** – “The room was clean, though it was a bit noisy at night.”

5.1.2 A，不过 B = but, though (softer)

- **不过** introduces a contrast or a small reservation, more gently than 但是.
- It starts the second clause: 我很想去，不过今天没时间.

我很想去，不过今天没时间。
wǒ hěn xiǎng qù bú guò jīn tiān méi shí jiān
Word guide: 我 – I; 很 – really; 想 – want to; 去 – go; 不过 – but; 今天 – today; 没 – have no; 时间 – time.



5.1.3 Adding a condition or a minor point

- **你可以用我的电脑，不过别下载游戏。** – “You can use my computer, but don’t download games.”
- The first clause is usually positive; 不过 adds the limit.

你可以用我的电脑，不过别下载游戏。
nǐ kě yǐ yòng wǒ de diàn nǎo bú guò bié xià zài yóu xì
Word guide: 你 – you; 可以 – can; 用 – use; 我 – my; 电脑 – computer; 不过 – but; 别 – don’t; 下载 – download; 游戏 – games.

5.1.4 Where 不过 goes

- 不过 starts its clause, before the subject: 不过我今天没时间, not 我不过今天没时间.
- Keep the reservation small: for a strong contrast, 但是 sounds more natural.

5.1.5 不过 = only, no more than

- Before a number or noun, 不过 can mean "only, merely": **他不过是个孩子。** – "He's only a child."
- The contrast "but" 不过 starts a clause; the "only" 不过 stands before what it limits.

他不过是个孩子。
tā bú guò shì ge hái zi
Word guide: 他 – he; 不过 – only; 是 – is; 个 – a; 孩子 – child.

5.1.6 Recap

- **A，不过 B** = A, but / though B: a gentle contrast or reservation.
- 但是 is stronger; 不过 + noun/number = only, merely.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.2 ■ 于是 (thereupon / and so)

5.2.1 And so they set off

- You are reading a short story aloud: the rain stopped, and the children rushed outside.
- **雨停了，于是孩子们跑出去玩了。** – "The rain stopped, and so the children ran out to play."

5.2.2 Event，于是 + next event

- **于是** = "thereupon, and so": the second event happens because of, and right after, the first.
- It is used for past events in narration: 他饿了，于是去买了一个面包.

他饿了，于是去买了一个面包。
tā è le yú shì qù mǎi le yí gè miàn bāo
Word guide: 他 – he; 饿 – hungry; 于是 – so; 去 – went; 买 – buy; 一个 – a; 面包 – bread roll.

于是: and so (what happened next)



5.2.3 Telling a story step by step

- **他听说那家店很有名，于是决定去试试。** – "He heard the shop was famous, so he decided to try it."
- 于是 makes the story flow: event → reaction.

他听说那家店很有名，于是决定去试试。
tā tīng shuō nà jiā diàn hěn yǒu míng yú shì jué dìng qù shì shi
Word guide: 他 – he; 听说 – heard; 那家 – that; 店 – shop; 很 – very; 有名 – famous; 于是 – so; 决定 – decided; 去 – go; 试试 – try it.

5.2.4 Past narration only

- 于是 tells what someone did next; it is not for plans, rules or advice: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 于是我们不去.
- It starts the second clause, usually before the subject if there is a new one: 于是我们回家了.

5.2.5 于是 versus 所以

- 所以 gives a logical result and fits any tense: 因为下雨，所以比赛取消了.
- 于是 moves a story forward with an action someone took: 下雨了，于是我们回家了.

因为下雨，所以比赛取消了。
yīn wèi xià yǔ suǒ yǐ bǐ sài qǔ xiāo le
Word guide: 因为 – because; 下雨 – it rained; 所以 – so; 比赛 – the match; 取消 – cancelled.

5.2.6 Recap

- **Event，于是 + next action** = and so, thereupon (past narration).
- 所以 = logical result in any tense; 于是 = what someone did next.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.3 ■ 还有 (also / and / what's more)

5.3.1 One more thing

- You are listing what to pack for a trip and suddenly remember an item.
- **带护照、钱包，还有手机充电器。** – "Bring your passport and wallet – and also your phone charger."

5.3.2 …，还有 … = and also, plus

- **还有** adds one more item to a list or one more point to what you have said.
- It can join nouns or whole sentences: 还有，明天别迟到.

我买了面包、牛奶，还有鸡蛋。
wǒ mǎi le miàn bāo niú nǎi hái yǒu jī dàn
Word guide: 我 – I; 买 – bought; 面包 – bread; 牛奶 – milk; 还有 – and also; 鸡蛋 – eggs.



5.3.3 At the start: one more point

- **还有，你别忘了给妈妈打电话。** – "Also, don't forget to call Mum."
- It signals that the speaker is adding something after a pause.

还有，你别忘了给妈妈打电话。
hái yǒu nǐ bié wàng le gěi mā ma dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 还有 – also; 你 – you; 别 – don't; 忘了 – forget; 给 – to; 妈妈 – Mum; 打电话 – call.

5.3.4 Two meanings of 还有

- As a linker, 还有 = "and also": 还有一件事. As a verb phrase, 还 + 有 = "still have": 我还有十块钱.
- Check whether an amount follows (still have) or a new item or point (and also).

5.3.5 还有 versus 和

- 和 joins two nouns in one phrase: 面包和牛奶.
- 还有 adds an afterthought or a new point, often after a comma: 面包、牛奶，还有鸡蛋.

我还有十块钱。

wǒ hái yǒu shí kuài qián
Word guide: 我 – I; 还 – still; 有 – have; 十 – ten; 块 – yuan; 钱 – money.

5.3.6 Recap

- **…，还有 …** = and also (one more item or point); 还有， … starts an added point.
- 还 + 有 + amount = still have; 和 joins nouns directly.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.4 ■ 另外 (besides / in addition)

5.4.1 The meeting notes

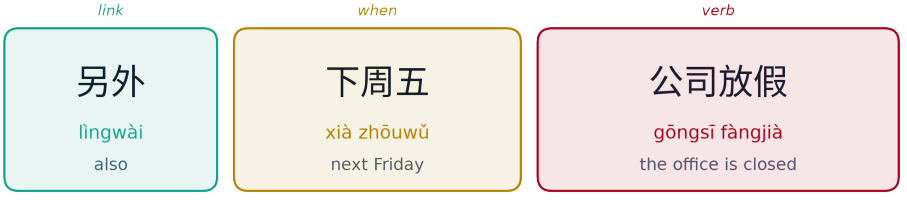
- Your manager finishes the main point of a meeting and then adds a separate item.
- **另外，下周五公司放假。** – "Also, the company is closed next Friday."

5.4.2 另外，… = in addition, besides

- **另外** at the start of a sentence adds a separate, new point: "in addition, besides that".
- It is common in emails, meetings and instructions.

另外，请大家带上身份证。
lìng wài qǐng dà jiā dài shang shēn fèn zhèng
Word guide: 另外 – in addition; 请 – please; 大家 – everyone; 带 – bring; 上 – (along); 身份证 – ID cards.

另外: in addition, separately



5.4.3 另外 + Verb: separately, also

- After the subject, 另外 means "separately, in addition": **我另外给你准备了一份。** – "I've prepared an extra one for you."
- **他另外还学日语。** – "He's also studying Japanese on the side."

我另外给你准备了一份。
wǒ lìng wài gěi nǐ zhǔn bèi le yí fèn
Word guide: 我 – I; 另外 – separately; 给 – for; 你 – you; 准备 – prepared; 一份 – one.

5.4.4 A new point, not the same one

- 另外 adds something different from what came before; to add more of the same, use 还 or 也.
- At the start of a sentence, put a comma after 另外.

5.4.5 另外 + 的 / number: the other one

- **另外的 / 另外一个** = the other one, another one: 另外一个人 – "the other person".
- 另外两个问题 – "the other two questions". This use is taught more in lesson 2203.

另外两个问题。
lìng wài liǎng gè wèn tí
Word guide: 另外 – the other; 两个 – two; 问题 – questions.

5.4.6 Recap

- **另外，…** = in addition (a new, separate point); **Subject + 另外 + Verb** = separately, extra.
- **另外 + number / 的 + noun** = the other / another.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.5 ■ 再说 (besides / what's more)

5.5.1 Two reasons not to go

- A friend wants to go out tonight, but you are tired and have no money left.
- **我太累了，再说也没钱了。** – "I'm too tired – and besides, I'm out of money."

5.5.2 Reason 1，再说 + reason 2

- **再说** = "besides, what's more", adding a further reason in conversation.
- It starts the second clause: 今天太冷了，再说我还有作业.

今天太冷了，再说我还有作业。
jīn tiān tài lěng le zài shuō wǒ hái yǒu zuò yè
Word guide: 今天 – today; 太 – too; 冷 – cold; 再说 – besides; 我 – I; 还 – still; 有 – have; 作业 – homework.

再说: besides (another reason)



5.5.3 Persuading or refusing

- **别买了，太贵了，再说你已经有一个了。** – "Don't buy it – it's too expensive, and besides, you already have one."
- 再说 often comes with 也 or 还 in the added reason.

再说你已经有一个了。
zài shuō nǐ yǐ jīng yǒu yí gè le
Word guide: 再说 – besides; 你 – you; 已经 – already; 有 – have; 一个 – one.

5.5.4 Reasons, not sequences

- 再说 adds a reason or argument; for "then" in a sequence, use 然后.
- It is spoken; in writing use 而且 or 此外.

5.5.5 再说 = deal with it later

- After a verb phrase or at the end, 再说 can mean "we'll see later": **这件事以后再说吧。** – "Let's talk about it later."
- Context tells you which: adding a reason, or postponing.

这件事以后再说吧。
zhè jiàn shì yǐ hòu zài shuō ba
Word guide: 这件事 – this matter; 以后 – later; 再说 – deal with.

5.5.6 Recap

- **Reason，再说 + another reason** = besides, what's more (spoken).
- **以后再说** = we'll deal with it later. Writing prefers 而且 / 此外.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.6 ■ 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

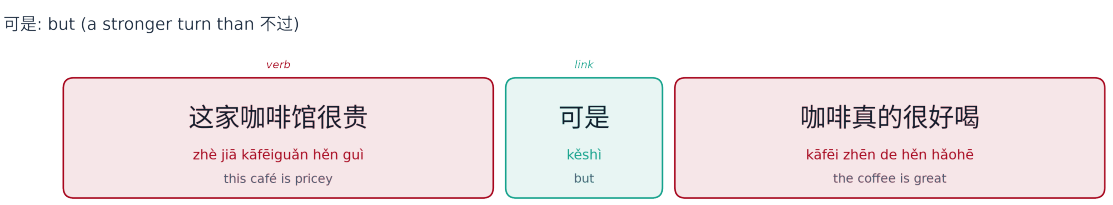
5.6.1 Two kinds of "but"

- You tell a friend the new café is expensive, but the coffee really is excellent.
- **这家咖啡馆很贵，可是咖啡真的很好喝。** – "This café is expensive, but the coffee is really good."

5.6.2 可是 and 但是 = but

- Both introduce a contrast and start the second clause. 但是 is neutral and fits writing; 可是 is a little more spoken.
- Both pair with 虽然: 虽然很累，但是很开心.

虽然很累，但是很开心。
suī rán hěn lèi dàn shì hěn kāi xīn
Word guide: 虽然 – although; 很 – very; 累 – tired; 但是 – but; 很 – very; 开心 – happy.



5.6.3 Feeling in 可是

- 可是 often carries the speaker's feeling: surprise, regret, complaint: **我想去，可是妈妈不让。** – "I want to go, but Mum won't let me."
- 但是 states the contrast more neutrally, as in reports.

我想去，可是妈妈不让。
wǒ xiǎng qù kě shì mā ma bú ràng
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – want to; 去 – go; 可是 – but; 妈妈 – Mum; 不 – not; 让 – let.

5.6.4 One "but" per contrast

- Do not double them: 虽然 … 但是 …, not 虽然 … 可是但是 ….
- Put 但是 / 可是 at the start of the clause, before the subject: 但是我没去, not 我但是没去.

5.6.5 可是, 但是, 不过

- 不过 is the softest: a small reservation.
- 但是 and 可是 make a clear contrast; 却 can add to it after the subject: 他很聪明，但是却不努力.

他很聪明，但是却不努力。
tā hěn cōng ming dàn shì què bù nǔ lì
Word guide: 他 – he; 很 – very; 聪明 – clever; 但是 – but; 却 – yet; 不 – not; 努力 – hard-working.

5.6.6 Recap

- **但是** = but (neutral, written too); **可是** = but (spoken, often with feeling).
- Both start the clause; 不过 is softer; 却 can follow the subject.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.7 ■ 而 (whereas / and yet)

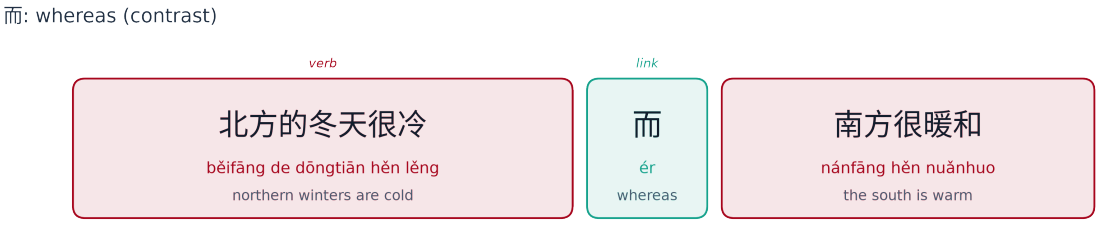
5.7.1 North and south

- You are comparing the weather in two parts of China for a school project.
- **北方的冬天很冷，而南方很暖和。** – "Winters in the north are cold, whereas the south is warm."

5.7.2 A，而 B = whereas, while

- **而** contrasts two facts side by side, in writing and formal speech.
- It starts the second clause: 哥哥喜欢运动，而弟弟喜欢看书.

哥哥喜欢运动，而弟弟喜欢看书。
gē ge xǐ huan yùn dòng ér dì di xǐ huan kàn shū
Word guide: 哥哥 – older brother; 喜欢 – likes; 运动 – sport; 而 – whereas; 弟弟 – younger brother; 喜欢 – likes; 看书 – reading.



5.7.3 Contrast with an expectation

- **他很有钱，而生活却很简单。** – “He’s very rich, yet he lives very simply.”
- 而 also joins two adjectives in writing: 简单而有效 – “simple and effective”.

这个方法简单而有效。
zhè ge fāng fǎ jiǎn dān ér yǒu xiào
Word guide: 这个 – this; 方法 – method; 简单 – simple; 而 – and; 有效 – effective.

5.7.4 Formal register

- 而 is written style; in chat say 但是, 可是 or just 却.
- Both clauses should be comparable (two places, two people, two qualities) for the “whereas” meaning.

5.7.5 而 versus 但是

- 但是 makes a “but”: the second part goes against the first.
- 而 often just sets two facts side by side: 他学法律，而我学医 – “He studies law, while I study medicine.”

他学法律，而我学医。
tā xué fǎ lǜ ér wǒ xué yī
Word guide: 他 – he; 学 – studies; 法律 – law; 而 – while; 我 – I; 学 – study; 医 – medicine.

5.7.6 Recap

- **A，而 B** = whereas / while / yet, written style.
- It sets two comparable facts side by side; 简单而有效 joins adjectives.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.8 ■ 用 / 通过 … 来 … (by means of …)

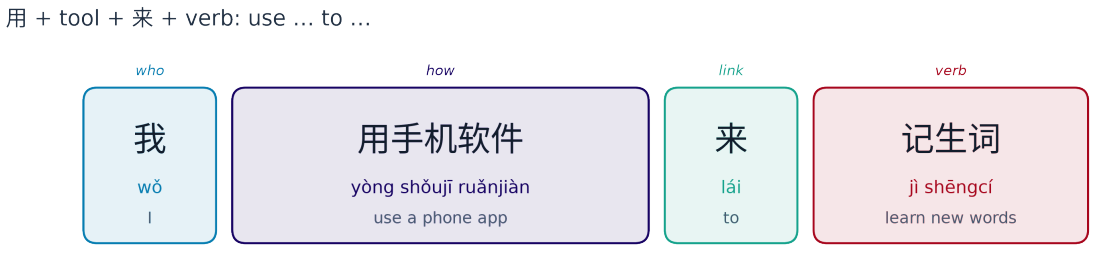
5.8.1 How do you learn new words?

- A classmate asks how you remember so many characters.
- **我用手机软件来记生词。** – "I use a phone app to memorise new words."

5.8.2 用 + tool + 来 + Verb

- **用 A 来 B** = "use A to do B": A is the tool or method, B the purpose.
- 来 can be left out: 我用手机记生词. With 来, the purpose sounds clearer.

我用手机来记生词。
wǒ yòng shǒu jī lái jì shēng cí
Word guide: 我 – I; 用 – use; 手机 – my phone; 来 – to; 记 – memorise; 生词 – new words.



5.8.3 通过 + method + 来 + Verb

- **通过 A 来 B** = "do B by means of A", often for methods and processes: **通过运动来减肥。** – "Lose weight through exercise."
- **我们可以通过网络来学习。** – "We can learn through the internet."

他通过运动来减肥。
tā tōng guò yùn dòng lái jiǎn féi
Word guide: 他 – he; 通过 – through; 运动 – exercise; 来 – to; 减肥 – lose weight.

5.8.4 The tool comes first

- Order: 用 + tool + (来) + action: 用筷子吃饭, not 吃饭用筷子 in this pattern.
- 来 here is not "come"; it links the means to the purpose.

5.8.5 用 versus 通过

- 用 takes a concrete tool or language: 用中文写, 用电脑做.
- 通过 takes a method, process or channel: 通过网络, 通过朋友介绍.

请用中文写。
qǐng yòng Zhōng wén xiě
Word guide: 请 – please; 用 – use; 中文 – Chinese; 写 – write.

5.8.6 Recap

- **用 + tool (+ 来) + Verb** = use … to …; **通过 + method (+ 来) + Verb** = by means of ….
- The means comes before the action; 来 links them.

Practise this pattern step by step.

5.9 ■ Practice without the models

5.9.1 不过 (a softer "but")

0501.1 Complete: "The film was good, though a bit long." 电影不错，…… 有点儿长。

0501.2 In 这不过是个小问题, what does 不过 mean?

- A. but
- B. however much
- C. not even
- D. only, merely

0501.3 Build: "You can use my computer, but don't download games."

Arrange all chunks: 你可以用我的电脑 / 别下载游戏。/ 不过 / ，

0501.4 不过 sounds softer than 但是.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0501.5 A friend asks about the hotel you stayed in. It was clean and friendly, but noisy at night. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.2 于是 (thereupon / and so)

0502.1 Complete: "He was hungry, so he went to buy some bread." 他饿了，…… 去买了面包。

0502.2 Which sentence uses 于是 correctly?

- A. 天黑了，于是我们回家了。
- B. 你应该休息，于是你会好。
- C. 如果明天下雨，于是我们不去。

- D. 于是因为下雨，比赛取消了。

0502.3 Build: “He heard the shop was famous, so he decided to try it.”

Arrange all chunks: 他听说那家店很有名 / ， / 决定去试试。/ 于是

0502.4 于是 is suitable for general rules about the future.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0502.5 You are reading a short story aloud: the rain stopped, and the children rushed outside. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.3 还有 (also / and / what’s more)

0503.1 Add a point: “Also, tomorrow’s meeting is at nine.” ……，明天的会九点开始。

0503.2 In 我还有两个苹果, what does 还有 mean?

- A. and also
- B. however
- C. still have
- D. besides

0503.3 Build: “I bought bread and milk, and also eggs.”

Arrange all chunks: 还有 / 我买了面包、牛奶 / 鸡蛋。/ ，

0503.4 还有 often adds an afterthought after a comma.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0503.5 You are listing what to pack for a trip and suddenly remember an item. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.4 另外 (besides / in addition)

0504.1 Add a separate point: “In addition, please bring your ID.” ……，请带身份证。

0504.2 What does 另外一个人 mean?

- A. besides a person
- B. the other person
- C. every person
- D. one more time

0504.3 Build: “He’s also studying Japanese on the side.”

Arrange all chunks: 另外 / 他 / 日语。/ 还学

0504.4 另外 is used to add a different, separate point.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0504.5 Your manager finishes the main point of a meeting and then adds a separate item. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.5 再说 (besides / what's more)

0505.1 Complete: "It's too late, and besides, the shop is closed." 太晚了，…… 商店也关门了。

0505.2 What does 这个问题明天再说 mean?

- A. Say this question again tomorrow.
- B. Besides this question, tomorrow…
- C. This question was said yesterday.
- D. Let's deal with this question tomorrow.

0505.3 Build: "Don't buy it – it's too expensive, and besides you already have one."

Arrange all chunks: 别买了 / ， 再说 / ， 太贵了 / 你已经有一个了。

0505.4 再说 is the usual linker for "then" in a sequence of steps.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0505.5 A friend wants to go out tonight, but you are tired and have no money left. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.6 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

0506.1 Complete (written): "Although it was raining, the match went ahead." 虽然下雨，…… 比赛照常进行。

0506.2 Which sentence has correct word order?

- A. 我想去，没时间但是。
- B. 我但是没去。
- C. 我想去，但是没时间。
- D. 但是我想去，没时间。

0506.3 Build: "I want to go, but Mum won't let me."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 妈妈不让。/ 可是 / 我想去

0506.4 却 can follow the subject to strengthen a contrast.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0506.5 You tell a friend the new café is expensive, but the coffee really is excellent. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.7 而 (whereas / and yet)

0507.1 Complete (written): "He likes coffee, whereas she likes tea." 他喜欢咖啡，…… 她喜欢茶。

0507.2 Which context suits 而 best?

- A. Ordering food in a restaurant
- B. Greeting a neighbour
- C. A newspaper article comparing two cities
- D. A text message to a friend

0507.3 Build: "This method is simple and effective."

Arrange all chunks: 而 / 简单 / 有效。/ 这个方法

0507.4 而 can simply set two facts side by side without a strong "but".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0507.5 You are comparing the weather in two parts of China for a school project. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.9.8 用 / 通过 ... 来 ... (by means of ...)

0508.1 Complete: "I use a dictionary to look up new words." 我 …… 词典来查生词。

0508.2 Which fits a method? "He found the job through a friend's introduction." 他 _____ 朋友介绍找到了工作。

- A. 跟
- B. 通过
- C. 用
- D. 对

0508.3 Build: "He loses weight through exercise."

Arrange all chunks: 减肥。/ 通过运动 / 他 / 来

0508.4 In 用手机来记生词, 来 means "come".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0508.5 A classmate asks how you remember so many characters. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

5.10 ■ Answers and explanations

5.10.1 不过 (a softer "but")

0501.1 不过

不过 adds a soft reservation.

0501.2 D. only, merely

Before a noun phrase, 不过 = only.

0501.3 你可以用我的电脑，不过别下载游戏。

Permission, then 不过 + limit.

0501.4 True.

不过 often adds a minor reservation.

0501.5 One possible response: 房间很干净，不过晚上有点儿吵。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不过 starts its clause, before the subject: 不过我今天没时间, not 我不过今天没时间.
- Keep the reservation small: for a strong contrast, 但是 sounds more natural.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.2 于是 (thereupon / and so)

0502.1 于是

于是 tells what he did next.

0502.2 A. 天黑了，于是我们回家了。

于是 narrates the next past action.

0502.3 他听说那家店很有名，于是决定去试试。

Event, then 于是 + decision.

0502.4 False.

It narrates what happened next in the past.

0502.5 One possible response: 雨停了，于是孩子们跑出去玩了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 于是 tells what someone did next; it is not for plans, rules or advice: 如果下雨，我们就不去, not 于是我们不去.

- It starts the second clause, usually before the subject if there is a new one: 于是我们回家了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.3 还有 (also / and / what's more)

0503.1 还有

还有 at the start adds a new point.

0503.2 C. still have

还 + 有 + amount = still have.

0503.3 我买了面包、牛奶，还有鸡蛋。

List, then 还有 + one more item.

0503.4 True.

It adds one more item or point.

0503.5 One possible response: 带护照、钱包，还有手机充电器。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- As a linker, 还有 = "and also": 还有一件事. As a verb phrase, 还 + 有 = "still have": 我还有十块钱.
- Check whether an amount follows (still have) or a new item or point (and also).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.4 另外 (besides / in addition)

0504.1 另外

另外 introduces a new, separate point.

0504.2 B. the other person

另外 + number + MW + noun = the other / another.

0504.3 他另外还学日语。

Subject + 另外 + verb phrase.

0504.4 True.

For more of the same, use 还 or 也.

0504.5 One possible response: 另外，下周五公司放假。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 另外 adds something different from what came before; to add more of the same, use 还 or 也.
- At the start of a sentence, put a comma after 另外.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.5 再说 (besides / what's more)

0505.1 再说

再说 adds a further reason.

0505.2 D. Let's deal with this question tomorrow.

再说 at the end postpones a matter.

0505.3 别买了，太贵了，再说你已经有一个了。

Reason 1, 再说 + reason 2.

0505.4 False.

Sequences use 然后; 再说 adds reasons.

0505.5 One possible response: 我太累了，再说也没钱了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 再说 adds a reason or argument; for "then" in a sequence, use 然后.
- It is spoken; in writing use 而且 or 此外.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.6 可是 / 但是 (two words for "but")

0506.1 但是

虽然 pairs with 但是 / 可是.

0506.2 C. 我想去，但是没时间。

但是 starts the contrasting clause.

0506.3 我想去，可是妈妈不让。

Clause 1, 可是 + clause 2.

0506.4 True.

True. 却 is an adverb after the subject that sharpens a contrast, often with 但是 or 可是: 我很累，但是他却很精神.

0506.5 One possible response: 这家咖啡馆很贵，可是咖啡真的很好喝。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not double them: 虽然 … 但是 …, not 虽然 … 可是但是 ….
- Put 但是 / 可是 at the start of the clause, before the subject: 但是我没去, not 我但是没去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.7 而 (whereas / and yet)

0507.1 而

而 contrasts two comparable facts.

0507.2 C. A newspaper article comparing two cities

而 is written, formal style.

0507.3 这个方法简单而有效。

Adj + 而 + Adj.

0507.4 True.

True. 而 can simply set two facts side by side ("while, whereas"): 他学法律，而我学医 "He studies law, while I study medicine."

0507.5 One possible response: 北方的冬天很冷，而南方很暖和。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 而 is written style; in chat say 但是, 可是 or just 却.
- Both clauses should be comparable (two places, two people, two qualities) for the "whereas" meaning.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

5.10.8 用 / 通过 ... 来 ... (by means of ...)

0508.1 用

用 + tool + 来 + action.

0508.2 B. 通过

A method or channel takes 通过.

0508.3 他通过运动来减肥。

通过 + method + 来 + purpose.

0508.4 False.

来 links the means to the purpose here.

0508.5 One possible response: 我用手机软件来记生词。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Order: 用 + tool + (来) + action: 用筷子吃饭, not 吃饭用筷子 in this pattern.
- 来 here is not "come"; it links the means to the purpose.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

6 Nouns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

6.1 ■ 其中 (among them / of which)

6.1.1 Thirty students, five from abroad

- Your teacher describes your new class to a visitor.
- **我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生。** – "There are thirty students in our class, five of whom are international students."

6.1.2 Group，其中 + part

- **其中** = "among them, of which": it refers back to a group just mentioned and picks out part of it.
- It starts the second clause: 我买了三本书，其中一本是小说.

我买了三本书，其中一本是小说。
wǒ mǎi le sān běn shū qí zhōng yì běn shì xiǎo shuō
Word guide: 我 – I; 买 – bought; 三本 – three; 书 – books; 其中 – of which; 一本 – one; 是 – is; 小说 – a novel.



6.1.3 The most, the best, a share

- **这些菜我都喜欢，其中我最喜欢饺子。** – "I like all these dishes; of them, I like dumplings best."

- With 之一: **长城是其中最有名的景点之一。** – "The Great Wall is one of the most famous sights among them."

其中我最喜欢饺子。
qí zhōng wǒ zuì xǐ huan jiǎo zi
Word guide: 其中 – among them; 我 – I; 最 – most; 喜欢 – like; 饺子 – dumplings.

6.1.4 Name the group first

- 其中 needs a group in the previous clause; it cannot start a conversation.
- The common form is 其中 + number + measure word: 其中两个, 其中一本.

6.1.5 其中 versus 中间 and 里

- 其中 refers to a group already named: 其中两个.
- 在 … 中 / 在 … 里 names the group in the same phrase: 在这些学生中，他最高.

在这些学生中，他最高。
zài zhè xiē xué sheng zhōng tā zuì gāo
Word guide: 在 – among; 这些 – these; 学生 – students; 中 – (among); 他 – he; 最 – most; 高 – tall.

6.1.6 Recap

- **Group，其中 + part** = of which, among them; it points back to a group just named.
- Use 在 … 中 when the group is named in the same phrase.

Practise this pattern step by step.

6.2 ■ Practice without the models

6.2.1 其中 (among them / of which)

0601.1 Complete: "I have three friends here; one of them is a doctor." 我在这儿有三个朋友，…… 一个是医生。

0601.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我最喜欢其中。
- B. 其中我最喜欢这个。
- C. 其中的这些颜色很好看。
- D. 这些颜色都很好看，其中我最喜欢蓝色。

0601.3 Build: "I like all these dishes; of them, I like dumplings best."

Arrange all chunks: 其中我 / ， / 这些菜我都喜欢 / 最喜欢饺子。

0601.4 在这些学生中 names the group within the same phrase.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0601.5 Your teacher describes your new class to a visitor. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

6.3 ■ Answers and explanations

6.3.1 其中 (among them / of which)

0601.1 其中

其中 picks out part of the group just mentioned.

0601.2 D. 这些颜色都很好看，其中我最喜欢蓝色。

The group must be named first; then 其中 picks one.

0601.3 这些菜我都喜欢，其中我最喜欢饺子。

Group, then 其中 + choice.

0601.4 True.

其中 points back; 在 … 中 names the group directly.

0601.5 One possible response: 我们班有三十个学生，其中五个是留学生。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 其中 needs a group in the previous clause; it cannot start a conversation.
- The common form is 其中 + number + measure word: 其中两个, 其中一本.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

7 Numbers

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

7.1 ■ Fractions with 分之

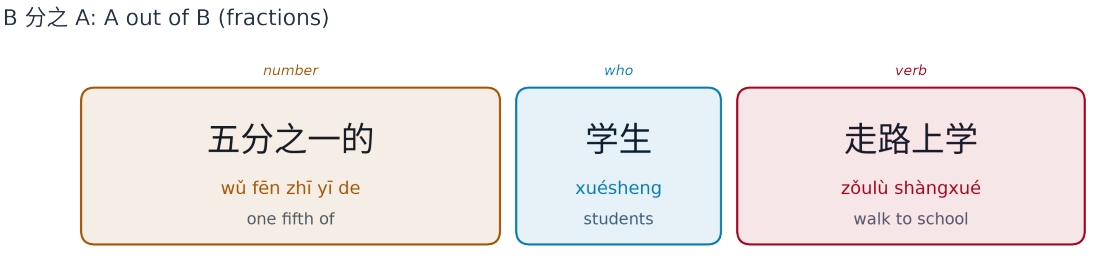
7.1.1 A survey result

- Your class did a survey: of every five students, one walks to school.
- **五分之一的学生走路上学。** – "One fifth of the students walk to school."

7.1.2 Denominator + 分之 + numerator

- **B 分之 A** = A/B: the bottom number comes first. 三分之一 = 1/3, 四分之三 = 3/4.
- Before a noun, add 的: 三分之二的人 – "two thirds of the people".

三分之二的人同意。
sān fēn zhī èr de rén tóng yì
Word guide: 三 – three; 分之 – parts of; 二 – two; 人 – people; 同意 – agree.



7.1.3 Percentages: 百分之

- **百分之 + number** = per cent: 百分之五十 = 50%, 百分之百 = 100%.
- **我们的成绩提高了百分之二十。** – "Our scores rose by 20%."

价格提高了百分之二十。
jià gé tí gāo le bǎi fēn zhī èr shí
Word guide: 价格 – the price; 提高 – rose; 百分之 – per cent; 二十 – twenty.

7.1.4 Bottom number first

- Say the denominator first: 3/4 = 四分之三, not 三分之四 (that is 4/3).
- 50% is 百分之五十, not 五十百分之.

7.1.5 一半 and 几分之几

- 1/2 is usually 一半 in speech: 一半的学生 – "half of the students".
- To ask "what fraction?", say 几分之几: 占几分之几? – "What fraction is it?"

一半的学生是女生。
yí bàn de xué sheng shì nǚ shēng
Word guide: 一半 – half; 学生 – students; 是 – are; 女生 – girls.

7.1.6 Recap

- **B 分之 A** = A/B (bottom first): 四分之三 = 3/4; **百分之 N** = N%.
- 一半 = a half; + 的 before a noun.

Practise this pattern step by step.

7.2 ■ Practice without the models

7.2.1 Fractions with 分之

0701.1 Write 2/5 in Chinese: ……

0701.2 What is 三分之四?

- A. 3.4
- B. 3/4
- C. 4/3
- D. 34%

0701.3 Match each expression to its value.

- 1. 百分之五十
- 1. 四分之一
- 1. 三分之二
- 1. 百分之百
- A. 50%
- B. 1/4
- C. 100%
- D. 2/3

0701.4 In speech, 一半 is usually used for one half.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0701.5 Your class did a survey: of every five students, one walks to school. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

7.3 ■ Answers and explanations

7.3.1 Fractions with 分之

0701.1 五分之二

Denominator first: 五分之二.

0701.2 C. 4/3

The first number is the denominator: 4/3.

0701.3 1–A: 百分之五十 = 50%; 2–B: 四分之一 = 1/4; 3–D: 三分之二 = 2/3; 4–C: 百分之百 = 100%

B 分之 A = A/B; 百分之 N = N%.

0701.4 True.

一半的学生 is more natural than 二分之一的学生.

0701.5 One possible response: 五分之一的学生走路上学。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say the denominator first: 3/4 = 四分之三, not 三分之四 (that is 4/3).
- 50% is 百分之五十, not 五十百分之.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8 Particles

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

8.1 ■ Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

8.1.1 Checking what you heard

- Your friend mentions she's moving next week, and you can't quite believe it.
- **你下个星期就搬家吗?** – "You're moving as soon as next week?"

8.1.2 Statement + 吗? = yes/no question

- Add **吗** to the end of a statement to make it a yes/no question; word order does not change.
- 他是老师。→ 他是老师吗? – "Is he a teacher?"

他是老师吗?
tā shì lǎo shī ma
Word guide: 他 – he; 是 – is; 老师 – a teacher.

就 + time ... 吗: checking a surprising detail



8.1.3 Checking and confirming

- With a rising, surprised tone, 吗 checks what you heard: **你不去吗?** – "You're not going?"
- A negative 吗 question often expects "yes" or shows surprise: 你不累吗? – "Aren't you tired?"

你不累吗?
nǐ bú lèi ma
Word guide: 你 – you; 不 – not; 累 – tired.

8.1.4 One question form at a time

- No 吗 after a question word: 你去哪儿? , not 你去哪儿吗? (unless it means "anywhere").

- No 吗 after A-not-A: 你去不去？, not 你去不去吗?

8.1.5 Answering a negative question

- Q: **你不喜欢吗?** A: 对，我不喜欢 – “Right, I don’t.” / 不，我喜欢 – “No, I do.”
- 对 agrees with the statement inside the question, which can feel the opposite of English.

对，我不喜欢。
duì wǒ bù xǐ huan
Word guide: 对 – right; 我 – I; 不 – don’t; 喜欢 – like it.

8.1.6 Recap

- **Statement + 吗?** = yes/no question; word order stays the same.
- Not with question words or A-not-A. For negative questions, 对 agrees with the negative statement.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.2 ■ … 吧，… ；… 吧，… (weighing options)

8.2.1 Can’t decide

- You can’t choose between two jobs: one is near home, the other pays more.
- **去吧，太远；不去吧，工资又很高。** – “If I take it, it’s too far; if I don’t, well, the pay is high.”

8.2.2 A 吧，…；B 吧，…

- **Option 1 + 吧，problem；Option 2 + 吧，problem** weighs two choices that both have drawbacks.
- 吧 here marks “suppose I …”; each option is followed by its downside.

买吧，太贵；不买吧，又很喜欢。
mǎi ba tài guì bù mǎi ba yòu hěn xǐ huan
Word guide: 买 – buy; 吧 – (suppose); 太 – too; 贵 – expensive; 不 – not; 买 – buy; 吧 – (suppose); 又 – but; 很 – really; 喜欢 – like it.

去吧 … 太远: weighing a choice



8.2.3 Showing a dilemma

- **说吧，怕他生气；不说吧，又觉得不好。** – "If I tell him, I'm afraid he'll be angry; if I don't, I feel bad."
- 又 in the second half often adds "but on the other hand".

说吧，怕他生气。
shuō ba pà tā shēng qì
Word guide: 说 – tell; 吧 – (suppose); 怕 – afraid; 他 – he; 生气 – angry.

8.2.4 Two sides, same shape

- Keep the two halves parallel: 去吧 …; 不去吧 …. Each needs its own problem.
- This 吧 is not a suggestion ("let's"); it means "if I were to …".

8.2.5 吧 as a suggestion

- At the end of a sentence, 吧 suggests: 我们走吧 – "Let's go."
- Inside the dilemma pattern, 吧 is followed by a comma and a problem.

我们走吧。
wǒ men zǒu ba
Word guide: 我们 – we; 走 – go; 吧 – (let's).

8.2.6 Recap

- **A 吧，problem；B 吧，problem** = whichever I choose, there is a downside.
- Parallel halves; 又 often in the second; different from the suggestion 吧.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.3 ■ Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

8.3.1 Don't worry

- Your friend is nervous about tomorrow's interview. You are sure it will go well.
- **你一定会成功的。** – "You'll definitely succeed." The final 的 adds certainty.

8.3.2 … 会 / 能 … 的 = certainty

- **Sentence + 的** strengthens a judgement, promise or reassurance: 我会去的, 他不会忘的.
- It often appears with 会, 能, 一定 or 肯定.

我会帮你的。
wǒ huì bāng nǐ de
Word guide: 我 – I; 会 – will; 帮 – help; 你 – you; 的 – (I'm sure).

一定会 … 的: sure to



8.3.3 Promises and reassurance

- **放心，我不会告诉别人的。** – "Don't worry, I won't tell anyone."
- **这个问题能解决的。** – "This problem can be solved, I'm sure."

放心，我不会告诉别人的。
fàng xīn wǒ bú huì gào su bié rén de
Word guide: 放心 – don't worry; 我 – I; 不会 – won't; 告诉 – tell; 别人 – anyone; 的 – (for sure).

8.3.4 Not the 是 … 的 pattern

- This 的 adds certainty to a future or general statement; 是 … 的 focuses on how/when/where a past event happened: 我是坐飞机来的.
- Without 的, the sentence is still correct; 的 just makes it more reassuring or firm.

8.3.5 Compare with 是 … 的

- **我会来的** = I'll definitely come (certainty).
- **我是昨天来的** = It was yesterday that I came (focus on the time of a past event).

我是昨天来的。
wǒ shì zuó tiān lái de
Word guide: 我 – I; 是 – (it was); 昨天 – yesterday; 来 – came.

8.3.6 Recap

- **会 / 能 / 一定 … + 的** = certainly, for sure: reassurance or a promise.
- Different from 是 … 的, which focuses on details of a past event.

Practise this pattern step by step.

8.4 ■ Practice without the models

8.4.1 Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

0801.1 Make a question: "Are you a student?" 你是学生 ……?

0801.2 Which question is correct?

- A. 你明天来吗?

- B. 吗你明天来?
- C. 你去不去吗?
- D. 你什么时候来吗?

0801.3 Q: 你不饿吗? You are not hungry. What do you say?

- A. 对，我饿。
- B. 对，我不饿。
- C. 不，我饿了。
- D. 吗，我不饿。

0801.4 Build: "Aren't you tired?"

Arrange all chunks: 累 / 吗? / 你 / 不

0801.5 Your friend mentions she's moving next week, and you can't quite believe it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.4.2 ... 吧，... ；... 吧，... (weighing options)

0802.1 Complete the dilemma: "If I eat it, I'll get fat; if I don't, I'll be hungry." 吃……，会胖；不吃吧，会饿。

0802.2 In 去吧，太远；不去吧，又想去, what does the speaker feel?

- A. Torn between two choices
- B. Sure about going
- C. Inviting a friend
- D. Happy to stay at home

0802.3 Build: "If I tell him, I'm afraid he'll be angry."

Arrange all chunks: 说吧 / ， / 生气。/ 怕他

0802.4 In the dilemma pattern, 吧 means "let's".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0802.5 You can't choose between two jobs: one is near home, the other pays more. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.4.3 Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

0803.1 Reassure: "He'll definitely come." 他一定会来 ……。

0803.2 Which sentence focuses on HOW a past event happened?

- A. 我会去的。

- B. 他不会忘的。
- C. 我是坐火车来的。
- D. 你会喜欢的。

0803.3 Build: “Don’t worry, I won’t tell anyone.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 我不会 / 放心 / 告诉别人 / 的。

0803.4 你会成功 is wrong without 的.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0803.5 Your friend is nervous about tomorrow’s interview. You are sure it will go well. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

8.5 ■ Answers and explanations

8.5.1 Statement + 吗 (yes/no confirmation)

0801.1 吗

Statement + 吗.

0801.2 A. 你明天来吗?

Only a plain statement takes 吗.

0801.3 B. 对，我不饿。

对 agrees with the negative statement "you're not hungry".

0801.4 你不累吗?

Negative statement + 吗.

0801.5 One possible response: 你下个星期就搬家吗?

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- No 吗 after a question word: 你去哪儿? , not 你去哪儿吗? (unless it means "anywhere").
- No 吗 after A-not-A: 你去不去? , not 你去不去吗?
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8.5.2 ... 吧，... ；... 吧，... (weighing options)

0802.1 吧

Option + 吧, then the problem.

0802.2 A. Torn between two choices

Each option has a drawback: a dilemma.

0802.3 说吧，怕他生气。

Option + 吧, then the worry.

0802.4 False.

Here it means "suppose I …"; the suggestion 吧 ends a sentence.

0802.5 One possible response: 去吧，太远；不去吧，工资又很高。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Keep the two halves parallel: 去吧 …；不去吧 …. Each needs its own problem.
- This 吧 is not a suggestion ("let's"); it means "if I were to …".

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

8.5.3 Sentence-final 的 (modal: certainty)

0803.1 的

Final 的 adds certainty.

0803.2 C. 我是坐火车来的。

是 … 的 focuses on a detail of a past event.

0803.3 放心，我不会告诉别人的。

Promise + 的.

0803.4 False.

的 only adds certainty; the sentence is fine without it.

0803.5 One possible response: 你一定会成功的。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- This 的 adds certainty to a future or general statement; 是 … 的 focuses on how/when/where a past event happened: 我是坐飞机来的.
- Without 的, the sentence is still correct; 的 just makes it more reassuring or firm.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9 Prepositions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

9.1 ■ 随着 (as / along with)

9.1.1 A changing city

- Your grandfather explains how his hometown has changed over forty years.
- **随着经济的发展，人们的生活越来越好。** – "As the economy has developed, people's lives have got better and better."

9.1.2 随着 + change, result

- **随着 + noun phrase** = "as, along with": link accompanying developments without treating the connector alone as proof of causation.
- The noun phrase is usually a process: 发展, 变化, 时间的推移, 年龄的增长.

随着年龄的增长，他越来越成熟。
suí zhe nián líng de zēng zhǎng tā yuè lái yuè chéng shú
Word guide: 随着 – as; 年龄 – age; 增长 – increase; 他 – he; 越来越 – more and more; 成熟 – mature.



9.1.3 Typical results: 越来越, 也, 变

- **随着天气变冷，感冒的人多了起来。** – "As the weather turns cold, more people are catching colds."
- The result often uses 越来越, 也, 开始 or a change word.

随着天气变冷，感冒的人多了起来。
suí zhe tiān qì biàn lěng gǎn mào de rén duō le qi lai
Word guide: 随着 – as; 天气 – the weather; 变 – turns; 冷 – cold; 感冒 – catch a cold; 人 – people; 多 – more; 起来 – (start to).

9.1.4 A process, not a single moment

- 随着 needs a gradual change; for a single event, use 因为 or 自从: 自从他来了以后 ….

- The 随着 phrase may precede the subject or follow it. Choose a complete clause that clearly identifies the accompanying development.

9.1.5 随着 versus 因为

- 因为 gives a cause: 因为下雨，比赛取消了.
- 随着 links two changes that grow together over time: 随着网络的普及，网购越来越方便.

随着网络的普及，网购越来越方便。
suí zhe wǎng luò de pǔ jí wǎng gòu yuè lái yuè fāng biàn
Word guide: 随着 – as; 网络 – the internet; 普及 – spreads; 网购 – online shopping; 越来越 – more and more; 方便 – convenient.

9.1.6 Recap

- **随着 + process，result** = as / along with …, … changes too.
- It needs a gradual change; single causes take 因为.

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.2 ■ 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding)

9.2.1 Strong in one area

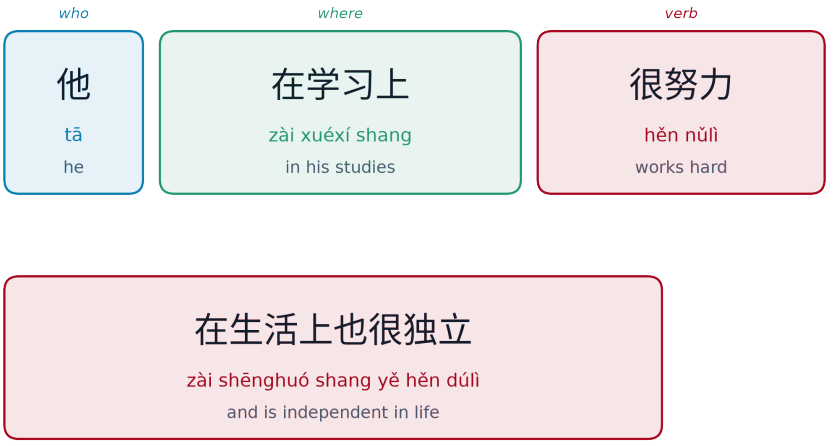
- Your teacher writes a report on your progress this term.
- **他在学习上很努力，在生活上也很独立。** – "He works hard in his studies and is also very independent in daily life."

9.2.2 在 + area + 上 = in terms of

- **在 + abstract noun + 上** = "in terms of, as far as … is concerned": 在学习上, 在工作上, 在这个问题上.
- It goes before the verb or at the start of the sentence.

在工作上，她帮了我很多。
zài gōng zuò shang tā bāng le wǒ hěn duō
Word guide: 在 – in; 工作 – work; 上 – (terms of); 她 – she; 帮 – helped; 我 – me; 很多 – a lot.

在 … 上: in terms of …



9.2.3 Opinions and differences

- **在这个问题上，我们的看法不一样。** – "On this question, our views differ."
- **中国和美国在文化上有很多不同。** – "China and the US differ a lot culturally."

在这个问题上，我们的看法不一样。
zài zhè ge wèn tí shang wǒ men de kàn fǎ bù yí yàng
Word guide: 在 – on; 这个 – this; 问题 – question; 上 – (on); 我们 – our; 看法 – views; 不一样 – differ.

9.2.4 Abstract area, not a place

- Here 上 is not "on top of": 在学习上 is about study as an area, not a physical place.
- Use 上 for an area of activity: 在学习上, not 在学习里.

9.2.5 在 … 上, 在 … 中, 在 … 下

- 在 … 中 = in the course of: 在学习中遇到问题 – "meet problems while studying".
- 在 … 下 = under (help or conditions): 在老师的帮助下 – "with the teacher's help".

在老师的帮助下，我进步了。
zài lǎo shī de bāng zhù xià wǒ jìn bù le
Word guide: 在 – with; 老师 – the teacher's; 帮助 – help; 下 – (under); 我 – I; 进步 – improved.

9.2.6 Recap

- **在 + area + 上** = in terms of, regarding an abstract area.
- 在 … 中 = in the course of; 在 … 下 = under (help or conditions).

Practise this pattern step by step.

9.3 ■ Practice without the models

9.3.1 随着 (as / along with)

0901.1 Complete: “As time passes, the city keeps changing.” …… 时间的推移，城市不断变化。

0901.2 Which sentence uses 随着 correctly?

- A. 随着他打电话，我出门了。
- B. 随着年龄的增长，他越来越懂事。
- C. 随着下雨，比赛取消了。
- D. 他随着生病，没来上课。

0901.3 Build: “As the weather turns cold, more people catch colds.”

Arrange all chunks: 随着天气变冷 / 感冒的人 / ， / 多了起来。

0901.4 随着 is the best choice for one single cause.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0901.5 Your grandfather explains how his hometown has changed over forty years. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.3.2 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding)

0902.1 Complete: “In terms of work, he is very serious.” 在工作 ……，他很认真。

0902.2 “With the teacher’s help, I improved a lot.” Which fits? 在老师的帮助 _____，我进步了很多。

- A. 下
- B. 里
- C. 上
- D. 中

0902.3 Build: “On this question, our views differ.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 我们的看法 / 不一样。/ 在这个问题上

0902.4 In 在学习上, 上 means “on top of”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

0902.5 Your teacher writes a report on your progress this term. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

9.4 ■ Answers and explanations

9.4.1 随着 (as / along with)

0901.1 随着

随着 + gradual process.

0901.2 B. 随着年龄的增长，他越来越懂事。

随着 links gradual changes, not single events.

0901.3 随着天气变冷，感冒的人多了起来。

随着 + change, result.

0901.4 False.

False. 随着 describes one thing changing along with another over time: 随着经济的发展，… For one single cause, use 因为 or 由于.

0901.5 One possible response: 随着经济的发展，人们的生活越来越好。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 随着 needs a gradual change; for a single event, use 因为 or 自从: 自从他来了以后 ….
- The 随着 phrase may precede the subject or follow it. Choose a complete clause that clearly identifies the accompanying development.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

9.4.2 在 … 上 (in terms of / regarding)

0902.1 上

在 + area + 上.

0902.2 A. 下

Help or conditions take 在 … 下.

0902.3 在这个问题上，我们的看法不一样。

在 … 上 sets the area.

0902.4 False.

It marks an abstract area: in terms of study.

0902.5 One possible response: 他在学习上很努力，在生活上也很独立。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- Here 上 is not “on top of”: 在学习上 is about study as an area, not a physical place.
- Use 上 for an area of activity: 在学习上, not 在学习里.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

10 Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

10.1 ■ 并 + 不 / 没 (emphatic denial)

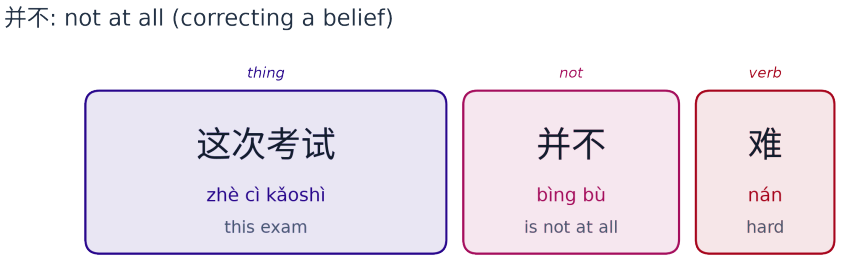
10.1.1 That's not true at all

- Everyone assumes the exam was hard because the class looks tired. In fact it was easy.
- **这次考试并不难。** – "This exam actually wasn't hard (contrary to what you think)."

10.1.2 并 + 不 / 没 = not at all, actually not

- **并不 / 并没 (有)** strengthens a negative to correct a mistaken belief.
- 并 goes right before 不 / 没: 他并没有生气 – "He isn't actually angry."

他并没有生气。
tā bìng méi yǒu shēng qì
Word guide: 他 – he; 并 – actually; 没有 – not; 生气 – angry.



10.1.3 Correcting an assumption

- **大家都以为他是老师，其实他并不是。** – "Everyone thought he was a teacher, but actually he isn't."
- **我并没说过这句话。** – "I never said that."

我并没说过这句话。
wǒ bìng méi shuō guo zhè jù huà
Word guide: 我 – I; 并 – actually; 没 – not; 说 – say; 过 – (ever); 这句话 – this.

10.1.4 A correction, not a plain negative

- Use 并不 / 并没 when someone believes the opposite; for a plain "no", 不 / 没 is enough.
- 并 never stands alone in this sense: 并不难, not 并难.

10.1.5 并不 versus 又不

- 并不 is calm and fits writing: 这个问题并不复杂.
- 又不 is emotional speech: 我又不是你的服务员!

这个问题并不复杂。
zhè ge wèn tí bìng bú fù zá
Word guide: 这个 – this; 问题 – problem; 并 – actually; 不 – not; 复杂 – complicated.

10.1.6 Recap

- **并 + 不 / 没** = actually not, not at all, correcting a mistaken idea.
- Calm and written; the emotional spoken version is 又不.

Practise this pattern step by step.

10.2 ■ Practice without the models

10.2.1 并 + 不 / 没 (emphatic denial)

1001.1 Correct an assumption: "Learning Chinese isn't actually that hard." 学中文 …… 不那么难。

1001.2 Everyone thinks he's angry, but he isn't. Which fits best?

- A. 他没并有生气。
- B. 他很生气。
- C. 他并没有生气。
- D. 他并生气。

1001.3 Build: "I never said that."

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 说过 / 并没 / 这句话。

1001.4 并不 sounds calmer than 又不.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1001.5 Everyone assumes the exam was hard because the class looks tired. In fact it was easy. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

10.3 ■ Answers and explanations

10.3.1 并 + 不 / 没 (emphatic denial)

1001.1 并

并 + 不 corrects a mistaken belief.

1001.2 C. 他并没有生气。

并没有 corrects the assumption.

1001.3 我并没说过这句话。

并 + 没 + verb + 过.

1001.4 True.

并不 is calm and written; 又不 is emotional speech.

1001.5 One possible response: 这次考试并不难。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 并不 / 并没 when someone believes the opposite; for a plain "no", 不 / 没 is enough.
- 并 never stands alone in this sense: 并不难, not 并难.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

11 Sentence patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

11.1 ■ 以 A 为 B (take A as B)

11.1.1 What do people eat there?

- You are describing food in different parts of China for a class presentation.
- **南方人以米饭为主食。** – "People in the south take rice as their staple food."

11.1.2 以 A 为 B = take A as B

- **以 A 为 B** = "take A as B, regard A as B": a formal, written pattern.
- Common fixed forms: 以 … 为主 (mainly …), 以 … 为中心 (with … at the centre), 以 … 为例 (take … as an example).

这次比赛以学生为主。
zhè cì bǐ sài yǐ xué sheng wéi zhǔ
Word guide: 这 – this; 次 – time; 比赛 – the competition; 以 – takes; 学生 – students; 为主 – as the main part.



11.1.3 Examples and focus

- **以北京为例，地铁线路已经超过二十条。** – "Take Beijing as an example: it already has more than twenty metro lines."
- **我们的课以口语为主。** – "Our classes focus mainly on speaking."

以北京为例。
yǐ Běi jīng wéi lì
Word guide: 以 – take; 北京 – Beijing; 为例 – as an example.

11.1.4 Read 为 as wéi

- In this pattern 为 is read wéi ("as, to be"), not wèi ("for").
- It is written style; in speech say 主要是 … or 比如 ….

11.1.5 以 … 为主 versus 主要

- Written: 这家店以川菜为主 – "This restaurant mainly serves Sichuan food."
- Spoken: 这家店主要做川菜. Same meaning, plainer style.

这家店主要做川菜。
zhè jiā diàn zhǔ yào zuò chuān cài
Word guide: 这 – this; 家 – (measure word); 店 – restaurant; 主要 – mainly; 做 – makes; 川菜 – Sichuan food.

11.1.6 Recap

- **以 A 为 B** = take A as B (written); 以 … 为主 = mainly …, 以 … 为例 = take … as an example.
- 为 is read wéi here; in speech use 主要 / 比如.

Practise this pattern step by step.

11.2 ■ Practice without the models

11.2.1 以 A 为 B (take A as B)

1101.1 Complete (written): "Take Shanghai as an example." …… 上海为例。

1101.2 How is 为 read in 以米饭为主?

- A. wéi
- B. wěi
- C. wēi
- D. wèi

1101.3 Build: "Our classes focus mainly on speaking."

Arrange all chunks: 以口语 / 为主。/ 我们的课

1101.4 这家店主要做川菜 is a spoken way to say 这家店以川菜为主.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1101.5 You are describing food in different parts of China for a class presentation. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

11.3 ■ Answers and explanations

11.3.1 以 A 为 B (take A as B)

1101.1 以

以 A 为例 = take A as an example.

1101.2 A. wéi

In 以 A 为 B ("take A as B"), 为 is read wéi: 以米饭为主 "mainly rice". Read wèi, it means "for", as in 为什么.

1101.3 我们的课以口语为主。

Topic + 以 A 为主.

1101.4 True.

主要 is the everyday equivalent of 以 … 为主.

1101.5 One possible response: 南方人以米饭为主食。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- In this pattern 为 is read wéi ("as, to be"), not wèi ("for").
- It is written style; in speech say 主要是 … or 比如 ….
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12 Verbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

12.1 ■ 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

12.1.1 The boss's request

- Your manager wants the report by Friday and tells you to inform the team.
- **经理让我通知大家星期五交报告。** – "The manager asked me to tell everyone to hand in their reports on Friday."

12.1.2 A + 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 + B + Verb

- **让** = let / make / ask; **叫** = tell (spoken); **请** = invite / ask politely; **使** = cause (written).
- B is the object of the first verb and the doer of the second: 让我通知.

老师叫我们早点儿来。
lǎo shī jiào wǒ men zǎo diǎnr lái
Word guide: 老师 – the teacher; 叫 – told; 我们 – us; 早点儿 – a bit earlier; 来 – come.



12.1.3 Causing feelings and changes

- **他的话让我很感动。** – "What he said moved me deeply."
- Written: **这个消息使大家非常吃惊。** – "The news greatly surprised everyone."

这个消息使大家非常吃惊。
zhè ge xiāo xi shǐ dà jiā fēi cháng chī jīng
Word guide: 这个 – this; 消息 – news; 使 – made; 大家 – everyone; 非常 – very; 吃惊 – surprised.

12.1.4 Choosing the verb

- 请 is for polite invitations; to your teacher, 请您 … sounds right, 叫您 … sounds rude.
- 使 needs a cause and a change of state, usually in writing; do not use it for permission: 妈妈让我去, not 妈妈使我去.

12.1.5 Negating the cause

- **不让 / 没让** = not allow / didn't ask: 医生不让他喝酒 – "The doctor won't let him drink."
- 让 … 别 … = tell someone not to: 妈妈让我别玩手机.

医生不让他喝酒。
yī shēng bú ràng tā hē jiǔ
Word guide: 医生 – the doctor; 不 – not; 让 – let; 他 – him; 喝 – drink; 酒 – alcohol.

12.1.6 Recap

- **A 让/叫/请/使 B + Verb**: let/make, tell, invite, cause (written).
- 请 is polite; 使 is formal and causes a change; 不让 = not allow.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.2 ■ 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

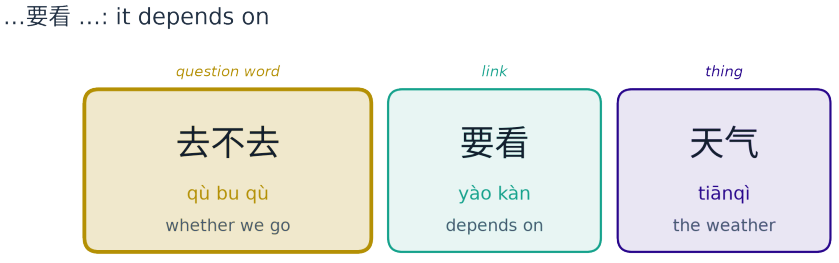
12.2.1 Are we going or not?

- Your friend asks if the hike is still on for Saturday.
- **去不去要看天气。** – "Whether we go depends on the weather."

12.2.2 … 要看 / 得看 + deciding factor

- **要看 / 得看 (děi kàn) + X** = "it depends on X": what is undecided comes first, then the factor.
- The undecided part is often A-not-A or a question word: 去不去, 什么时候, 怎么样.

买不买要看价格。
mǎi bu mǎi yào kàn jià gé
Word guide: 买 – buy; 不 – or not; 买 – buy; 要看 – depends on; 价格 – the price.



12.2.3 Short answers

- A: 你明天来吗? B: **得看情况。** – "It depends."
- **成绩好不好，主要看你努力不努力。** – "Whether your results are good mainly depends on whether you work hard."

得看情况。
děi kàn qíng kuàng
Word guide: 得看 – depends on; 情况 – the situation.

12.2.4 Order and reading

- Put the undecided matter first, then 要看 + factor: 去不去要看天气, not 要看天气去不去 in most speech.
- In 得看, 得 is read děi ("must"), not de.

12.2.5 要看 versus 决定于 / 取决于

- 取决于 is the formal written form: 结果取决于大家的努力 – "The result depends on everyone's effort."
- 要看 / 得看 is the everyday spoken form.

结果取决于大家的努力。
jié guǒ qǔ jué yú dà jiā de nǔ lì
Word guide: 结果 – the result; 取决于 – depends on; 大家 – everyone's; 努力 – effort.

12.2.6 Recap

- **Undecided matter + 要看 / 得看 + factor** = it depends on ….
- 得看情况 = it depends; formal 取决于. 得 here = děi.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.3 ■ 好像 (it seems / as if)

12.3.1 Something seems wrong

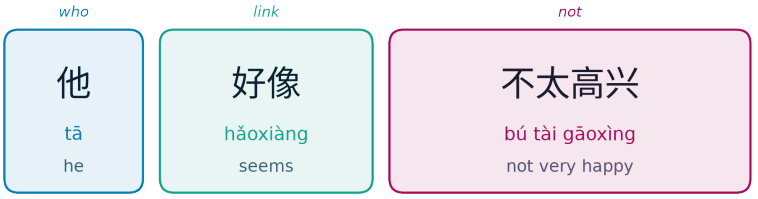
- Your roommate has been quiet all evening and didn't eat dinner.
- **他好像不太高兴。** – "He seems a bit unhappy."

12.3.2 好像 + guess = it seems

- **好像** = "it seems, apparently": a guess based on what you notice, not a fact you have checked.
- It goes after the subject or at the start: 好像要下雨了.

好像要下雨了。
hǎo xiàng yào xià yǔ le
Word guide: 好像 – it seems; 要 – going to; 下雨 – rain.

好像: seem, as if



12.3.3 好像 ... 一样 = as if, like

- **他高兴得好像个孩子一样。** – "He was as happy as a child."
- **这儿的冬天好像春天一样暖和。** – "Winter here is as warm as spring."

这儿的冬天好像春天一样暖和。
zhèr de dōng tiān hǎo xiàng chūn tiān yí yàng nuǎn huo
Word guide: 这儿 – here; 冬天 – winter; 好像 – is like; 春天 – spring; 一样 – (as); 暖和 – warm.

12.3.4 A guess, so stay tentative

- 好像 softens what you say; do not pair it with 一定 (certainly): 他好像病了, not 他好像一定病了.
- For a looks-based impression, 看起来 is also possible: 他看起来很累.

12.3.5 好像 versus 看来

- 好像 is a soft guess: 我好像见过他 – "I think I've seen him somewhere."
- 看来 draws a conclusion from evidence: 他没来，看来是生病了.

我好像见过他。
wǒ hǎo xiàng jiàn guo tā
Word guide: 我 – I; 好像 – seem to; 见过 – have met; 他 – him.

12.3.6 Recap

- **好像 + guess** = it seems / apparently; **好像 ... 一样** = as if / like.
- Tentative, so not with 一定; 看来 = conclusion from evidence.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.4 ■ 在于 (lies in / consists in)

12.4.1 The secret of success

- In an interview, a famous athlete is asked why she keeps winning.
- **成功的关键在于坚持。** – "The key to success lies in perseverance."

12.4.2 A 在于 B = A lies in B

- **在于** = “lies in, consists in, depends on”: it names where the key point, problem or reason is.
- The subject is usually abstract: 问题, 关键, 原因, 区别.

问题在于时间不够。
wèn tí zài yú shí jiān bú gòu
Word guide: 问题 – the problem; 在于 – lies in; 时间 – time; 不够 – not enough.



12.4.3 Explaining a difference or a reason

- **这两个方法的区别在于速度。** – “The difference between the two methods lies in speed.”
- **学好外语在于多练习。** – “Learning a language well comes down to plenty of practice.”

这两个方法的区别在于速度。
zhè liǎng gè fāng fǎ de qū bié zài yú sù dù
Word guide: 这 – these; 两个 – two; 方法 – methods’; 区别 – difference; 在于 – lies in; 速度 – speed.

12.4.4 Abstract subjects, formal style

- 在于 needs an abstract subject (key, problem, difference); not 他在于北京 for “he is in Beijing”.
- It is formal; in speech, 主要是 … often replaces it: 问题主要是时间不够.

12.4.5 在于 versus 在 and 是

- 在 + place = be located: 他在北京.
- 是 states identity: 关键是坚持. 在于 stresses that the point lies there: 关键在于坚持.

关键是坚持。
guān jiàn shì jiān chí
Word guide: 关键 – the key; 是 – is; 坚持 – perseverance.

12.4.6 Recap

- **Abstract A + 在于 + B** = A lies in / comes down to B (formal).
- Not for location (在); in speech, 主要是 / 是 also work.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.5 ■ 以为 (mistakenly think)

12.5.1 I thought it was tomorrow

- You arrive at the cinema and the staff tell you your film was yesterday.
- **我以为电影是今天！** – "I thought the film was today!" (but I was wrong)

12.5.2 以为 = mistakenly think

- **以为** = "thought (wrongly), assumed": the belief turned out to be false.
- Often a second clause gives the truth: 我以为他是中国人，原来他是日本人.

我以为他是中国人。
wǒ yǐ wéi tā shì Zhōng guó rén
Word guide: 我 – I; 以为 – thought; 他 – he; 是 – was; 中国人 – Chinese.



12.5.3 The belief and the truth

- **我以为你已经走了，没想到你还在。** – "I thought you'd already left – I didn't expect you'd still be here."
- With 还 for emphasis: 我还以为你不来了 – "And here I was thinking you weren't coming."

我还以为你不来了。
wǒ hái yǐ wéi nǐ bù lái le
Word guide: 我 – I; 还 – (even); 以为 – thought; 你 – you; 不 – not; 来 – come.

12.5.4 以为 versus 认为

- For a considered opinion, use 认为: 我认为这个办法很好 – "I think this method is good." 以为 suggests the belief was wrong.
- Do not use 以为 for a correct belief that you are stating as fact.

12.5.5 以为 versus 觉得

- 觉得 = feel, think (neutral, everyday): 我觉得有点儿冷.
- 以为 usually comes with the realisation that it wasn't so.

我认为这个办法很好。
wǒ rèn wéi zhè ge bàn fǎ hěn hǎo
Word guide: 我 – I; 认为 – think; 这个 – this; 办法 – method; 很 – very; 好 – good.

12.5.6 Recap

- **以为** = thought (wrongly), assumed; often followed by the truth (原来 / 没想到).
- Opinion = 认为; feeling or everyday "think" = 觉得.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.6 ■ 通过 (through / by means of)

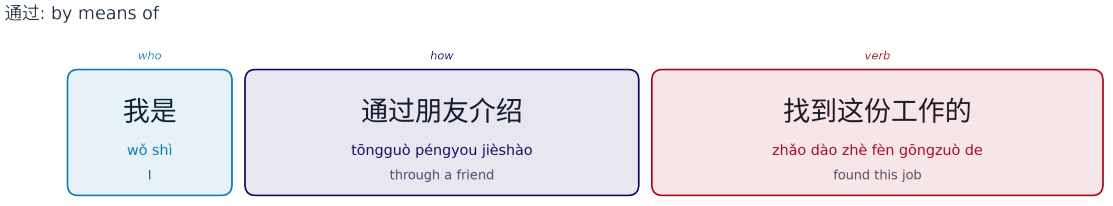
12.6.1 How did you find the job?

- A friend asks how you got your new job so quickly.
- **我是通过朋友介绍找到这份工作的。** – "I found this job through a friend's introduction."

12.6.2 通过 + means, result

- **通过 + means / channel** = "through, by means of": how a result is reached.
- It goes before the verb or at the start: 通过这次活动，大家互相了解了.

通过这次活动，大家互相了解了。
tōng guò zhè cì huó dòng dà jiā hù xiāng liǎo jiě le
Word guide: 通过 – through; 这次 – this; 活动 – event; 大家 – everyone; 互相 – each other; 了解 – got to know.



12.6.3 通过 the verb: pass

- As a verb, 通过 = pass (an exam, a test, a vote): **他通过了考试。** – "He passed the exam."
- Also "go through" a place: 车子通过了大桥 – "The car crossed the bridge."

他通过了考试。
tā tōng guò le kǎo shì

Word guide: 他 – he; 通过 – passed; 考试 – the exam.

12.6.4 Keep a subject in the result

- A sentence starting with 通过 … still needs a subject in the result: 通过学习，我进步了, not 通过学习，使我进步了.
- That missing-subject error is a classic exam trap; check for a subject after the comma.

12.6.5 通过 versus 经过

- 通过 stresses the means: 通过网络买票 – "buy tickets online".
- 经过 stresses a process gone through: 经过三年的努力 – "after three years of effort".

经过三年的努力，他成功了。
jīng guò sān nián de nǔ lì tā chéng gōng le
Word guide: 经过 – after; 三年 – three years; 努力 – effort; 他 – he; 成功 – succeeded.

12.6.6 Recap

- **通过 + means** = through, by means of; as a verb, **通过** = pass.
- Keep a subject in the result clause. 经过 = after going through a process.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.7 ■ 来自 (come from)

12.7.1 Where are they from?

- Your summer camp has students from all over the world.
- **这些学生来自十多个国家。** – "These students come from more than ten countries."

12.7.2 Subject + 来自 + place

- **来自** = "come from", a formal alternative to 从 … 来: 他来自上海 = 他是从上海来的.
- The place follows directly, with no 从.

他来自上海。
tā lái zì Shàng hǎi
Word guide: 他 – he; 来自 – comes from; 上海 – Shanghai.

来自: come from (formal)



12.7.3 Sources, not just places

- **这个消息来自一家报纸。** – "This news comes from a newspaper."
- **他的压力主要来自工作。** – "His stress comes mainly from work."

他的压力主要来自工作。
tā de yā lì zhǔ yào lái zì gōng zuò
Word guide: 他 – his; 压力 – stress; 主要 – mainly; 来自 – comes from; 工作 – work.

12.7.4 No 从, no 来 at the end

- Say 来自中国, not 来自从中国 or 来自中国来.
- 来自 is formal; in conversation, 我是从中国来的 or 我是中国人 is more natural.

12.7.5 来自 versus 从 … 来

- Written / introduction: 她来自北京大学 – "She is from Peking University."
- Spoken: 她是从北京来的 – "She came from Beijing."

她是从北京来的。
tā shì cóng Běi jīng lái de
Word guide: 她 – she; 是 – (it was); 从 – from; 北京 – Beijing; 来 – came.

12.7.6 Recap

- **来自 + place / source** = come from (formal); no 从 before the place.
- Spoken equivalent: 是从 … 来的.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.8 ■ 来 as a dummy verb (I'll do it)

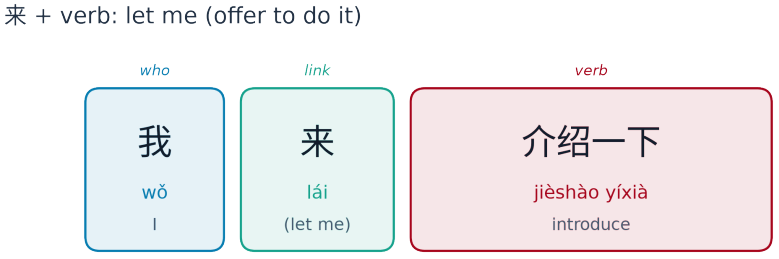
12.8.1 Let me do it

- Your grandmother is struggling with a heavy box. You step in.
- **我来吧！** – "Let me do it!" 来 stands in for the real action.

12.8.2 来 as a stand-in verb

- **(我) 来 + (Verb)** = “I’ll do it, let me take care of it”. 来 replaces or introduces the action.
- With a verb after it: 我来介绍一下 – “Let me introduce …”.

我来介绍一下。
wǒ lái jiè shào yí xià
Word guide: 我 – I; 来 – (will); 介绍 – introduce; 一下 – briefly.



12.8.3 Ordering and serving

- In a restaurant: **来一碗牛肉面。** – “A bowl of beef noodles, please.” 来 = “bring / give me”.
- **再来一个!** – “One more!” (an encore, another dish).

来一碗牛肉面。
lái yì wǎn niú ròu miàn
Word guide: 来 – bring; 一碗 – a bowl of; 牛肉面 – beef noodles.

12.8.4 Casual and context-bound

- This 来 is spoken; the real action must be clear from context (carrying, paying, ordering).
- It does not mean “come” here: 我来吧 is “let me (do it)”, not “let me come”.

12.8.5 来 versus 去 before a verb

- **我来做** = I’ll do it (here, I’m taking it on).
- **我去买** = I’ll go and buy it (moving away to do it).

我去买吧。
wǒ qù mǎi ba
Word guide: 我 – I; 去 – go; 买 – buy.

12.8.6 Recap

- **我来 (+ Verb)** = let me do it; **来 + item** = bring me / I'll have (ordering).
- Spoken; the action is clear from context. 去 + Verb = go and do it.

Practise this pattern step by step.

12.9 ■ Practice without the models

12.9.1 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

1201.1 Complete: "His words moved me deeply." 他的话 …… 我很感动。

1201.2 You invite your professor to give a talk. Which verb fits? 我们想 ____ 王教授来做报告。

- A. 叫
- B. 使
- C. 请
- D. 让

1201.3 Build: "The doctor won't let him drink."

Arrange all chunks: 医生 / 喝酒。/ 他 / 不让

1201.4 使 is the usual verb for giving permission in conversation.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1201.5 Your manager wants the report by Friday and tells you to inform the team. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.2 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

1202.1 Complete: "Whether we go depends on the weather." 去不去 …… 天气。

1202.2 How is 得 read in 得看情况?

- A. děi
- B. dé
- C. de
- D. dì

1202.3 Build: "Whether your results are good depends on whether you work hard."

Arrange all chunks: 成绩好不好 / 要看你 / 努力不努力。/ ，

1202.4 取决于 is the formal written equivalent of 要看.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1202.5 Your friend asks if the hike is still on for Saturday. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.3 好像 (it seems / as if)

1203.1 Complete: “It seems the shop is closed.” 商店 …… 关门了。

1203.2 Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他好像生病了。
- B. 好像他一定生病。
- C. 他好像一定生病了。
- D. 他生病好像了。

1203.3 Build: “Winter here is as warm as spring.”

Arrange all chunks: 这儿的冬天 / 好像春天 / 暖和。/ 一样

1203.4 我好像见过他 means “I think I’ve seen him before.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1203.5 Your roommate has been quiet all evening and didn’t eat dinner. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.4 在于 (lies in / consists in)

1204.1 Complete: “The problem lies in a lack of money.” 问题 …… 钱不够。

1204.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我的家在于上海。
- B. 他在于学校学习。
- C. 在于他是老师。
- D. 成功的关键在于努力。

1204.3 Build: “The difference lies in speed.”

Arrange all chunks: 在于 / 速度。/ 区别

1204.4 关键是坚持 and 关键在于坚持 have similar meanings.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1204.5 In an interview, a famous athlete is asked why she keeps winning. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.5 以为 (mistakenly think)

1205.1 Complete: “I thought you were a teacher (but you’re not).” 我 …… 你是老师。

1205.2 In a debate: “I think this plan is reasonable.” Which verb fits?

- A. 原来
- B. 认为
- C. 以为
- D. 好像

1205.3 Build: “I thought you’d already left.”

Arrange all chunks: 你 / 已经 / 我以为 / 走了。

1205.4 我还以为你不来了 suggests the speaker was wrong.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1205.5 You arrive at the cinema and the staff tell you your film was yesterday. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.6 通过 (through / by means of)

1206.1 Complete: “Through this event, everyone got to know each other.” …… 这次活动，大家互相了解了。

1206.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 通过学习，使我进步了很多。
- B. 我通过学习使进步了。
- C. 通过学习，进步了很多使我。
- D. 通过学习，我进步了很多。

1206.3 Build: “He passed the exam.”

Arrange all chunks: 考试。 / 通过了 / 他

1206.4 经过 stresses a process; 通过 stresses the means.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1206.5 A friend asks how you got your new job so quickly. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.7 来自 (come from)

1207.1 Complete (formal introduction): “She comes from Canada.” 她 …… 加拿大。

1207.2 Which is correct?

- A. 他从来自英国。
- B. 他来自英国来。
- C. 他来自从英国。
- D. 他来自英国。

1207.3 Build: “His stress comes mainly from work.”

Arrange all chunks: 来自 / 主要 / 工作。/ 他的压力

1207.4 来自 sounds more formal than 是从 … 来的.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1207.5 Your summer camp has students from all over the world. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.9.8 来 as a dummy verb (I’ll do it)

1208.1 Offer to pay: “Let me pay!” 我 …… 付钱!

1208.2 In a restaurant, what does 来两瓶啤酒 mean?

- A. Two bottles of beer are coming.
- B. Two bottles of beer, please.
- C. Beer comes in two bottles.
- D. Come and drink two beers.

1208.3 Build: “Let me introduce (him/her) briefly.”

Arrange all chunks: 来 / 介绍 / 我 / 一下。

1208.4 我来吧 here means “let me come”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1208.5 Your grandmother is struggling with a heavy box. You step in. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

12.10 ■ Answers and explanations

12.10.1 让 / 叫 / 请 / 使 (causative)

1201.1 让

让/使 + person + feeling.

1201.2 C. 请

请 is the polite invitation.

1201.3 医生不让他喝酒。

A + 不让 + B + verb.

1201.4 False.

Permission is 让; 使 is formal and causes a change.

1201.5 One possible response: 经理让我通知大家星期五交报告。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 请 is for polite invitations; to your teacher, 请您 … sounds right, 叫您 … sounds rude.
- 使 needs a cause and a change of state, usually in writing; do not use it for permission: 妈妈让我去, not 妈妈使我去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.2 要看 / 得看 (it depends on)

1202.1 要看

Undecided matter + 要看 + factor.

1202.2 A. děi

Here 得 means "must, have to" and is read děi: 得看情况 "It depends on the situation." As a particle after a verb it is de; dé means "obtain".

1202.3 成绩好不好，要看你努力不努力。

Undecided matter + 要看 + factor.

1202.4 True.

结果取决于 … = the result depends on ….

1202.5 One possible response: 去不去要看天气。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- Put the undecided matter first, then 要看 + factor: 去不去要看天气, not 要看天气去不去 in most speech.
- In 得看, 得 is read děi ("must"), not de.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.3 好像 (it seems / as if)

1203.1 好像

好像 + guess.

1203.2 A. 他好像生病了。

好像 is tentative and does not combine with 一定.

1203.3 这儿的冬天好像春天一样暖和。

A + 好像 + B + 一样 + Adj.

1203.4 True.

好像 softens the memory into a guess.

1203.5 One possible response: 他好像不太高兴。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 好像 softens what you say; do not pair it with 一定 (certainly): 他好像病了, not 他好像一定病了.
- For a looks-based impression, 看起来 is also possible: 他看起来很累.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.4 在于 (lies in / consists in)

1204.1 在于

Abstract subject + 在于 + where it lies.

1204.2 D. 成功的关键在于努力。

成功的关键在于努力 is right: 在于 means "lies in" and links an abstract subject (关键, 问题) to its cause. It does not mean "is in" a place, so it cannot replace 在.

1204.3 区别在于速度。

A + 在于 + B.

1204.4 True.

在于 stresses that the point lies there; 是 states it.

1204.5 One possible response: 成功的关键在于坚持。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 在于 needs an abstract subject (key, problem, difference); not 他在于北京 for "he is in Beijing".
- It is formal; in speech, 主要是 … often replaces it: 问题主要是时间不够.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.5 以为 (mistakenly think)

1205.1 以为

以为 marks a mistaken belief.

1205.2 B. 认为

A considered opinion takes 认为; 以为 suggests a mistake.

1205.3 我以为你已经走了。

以为 + mistaken belief.

1205.4 True.

The person did come; the belief was mistaken.

1205.5 One possible response: 我以为电影是今天!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- For a considered opinion, use 认为: 我认为这个办法很好 – "I think this method is good." 以为 suggests the belief was wrong.
- Do not use 以为 for a correct belief that you are stating as fact.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.6 通过 (through / by means of)

1206.1 通过

通过 + means, then the result.

1206.2 D. 通过学习，我进步了很多。

The result clause needs its own subject; 通过 …, 使 … has none.

1206.3 他通过了考试。

通过 as a verb = pass.

1206.4 True.

That is the key difference.

1206.5 One possible response: 我是通过朋友介绍找到这份工作的。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- A sentence starting with 通过 … still needs a subject in the result: 通过学习，我进步了, not 通过学习，使我进步了.
- That missing-subject error is a classic exam trap; check for a subject after the comma.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.7 来自 (come from)

1207.1 来自

来自 + place.

1207.2 D. 他来自英国。

来自 takes the place directly.

1207.3 他的压力主要来自工作。

Subject + 主要 + 来自 + source.

1207.4 True.

来自 suits introductions and writing.

1207.5 One possible response: 这些学生来自十多个国家。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say 来自中国, not 来自从中国 or 来自中国来.
- 来自 is formal; in conversation, 我是从中国来的 or 我是中国人 is more natural.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

12.10.8 来 as a dummy verb (I'll do it)

1208.1 来

我来 + verb = let me do it.

1208.2 B. Two bottles of beer, please.

来 + item = bring me / I'll have.

1208.3 我来介绍一下。

我来 + verb + 一下.

1208.4 False.

It means "let me (do it)".

1208.5 One possible response: 我来吧!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- This 来 is spoken; the real action must be clear from context (carrying, paying, ordering).
- It does not mean "come" here: 我来吧 is "let me (do it)", not "let me come".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

13 Auxiliary verbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

13.1 ■ 不用 (don't need to)

13.1.1 My treat

- You take a friend to lunch, and she reaches for her wallet.
- **不用给钱，我请客。** – "You don't need to pay – it's on me."

13.1.2 不用 + Verb = don't need to

- **不用 + Verb** = "there's no need to": 不用担心, 不用客气, 不用去.
- It is the usual negative of 要 / 得 (must) when something is unnecessary.

你不用担心。
nǐ bú yòng dān xīn
Word guide: 你 – you; 不用 – don't need to; 担心 – worry.



13.1.3 Polite replies

- A: 谢谢！ B: **不用谢。** – "No need to thank me."
- A: 要我帮忙吗? B: **不用了，谢谢。** – "No need, thanks."

不用了，谢谢。
bú yòng le xiè xie
Word guide: 不用 – no need; 谢谢 – thanks.

13.1.4 Not "don't use", not "mustn't"

- 不用 + Verb means "no need to"; "mustn't" is 不能 / 不可以: 这里不能抽烟.
- 不用 + noun can mean "don't use": 不用筷子 – "not use chopsticks". Check whether a verb or noun follows.

13.1.5 不用 versus 别

- 别 + Verb = “don’t (do it)”, an order: 别去!
- 不用 + Verb = “you needn’t”, kinder and lighter: 不用去了 – “No need to go any more.”

别去!
bié qù
Word guide: 别 – don’t; 去 – go.

13.1.6 Recap

- **不用 + Verb** = don’t need to; 不用谢 / 不用了 are polite replies.
- “Mustn’t” = 不能; “don’t!” = 别.

Practise this pattern step by step.

13.2 ■ 得 (děi) (must / have to)

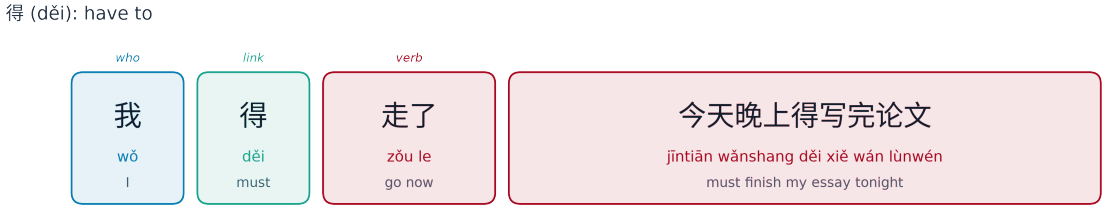
13.2.1 I have to go

- It is 9 p.m. and you still have an essay due tomorrow morning.
- **我得走了，今天晚上得写完论文。** – “I have to go; I’ve got to finish my essay tonight.”

13.2.2 得 (děi) + Verb = must, have to

- **得** read **děi** before a verb = “must, have to”, common in speech: 我得走了, 你得早点儿睡.
- It expresses necessity or obligation.

你得早点儿睡。
nǐ děi zǎo diǎnr shuì
Word guide: 你 – you; 得 – have to; 早点儿 – earlier; 睡 – sleep.



13.2.3 Spoken necessity

- **明天有考试，我得复习。** – “There’s an exam tomorrow; I have to revise.”
- **这件事得问老师。** – “We’ll have to ask the teacher about this.”

明天有考试，我得复习。
míng tiān yǒu kǎo shì wǒ děi fù xí

Word guide: 明天 – tomorrow; 有 – there is; 考试 – an exam; 我 – I; 得 – have to; 复习 – revise.

13.2.4 The negative is 不用

- "Don't have to" is 不用, never 不得: 你不用来, not 你不得来.
- Read it děi only before a verb meaning "must"; after a verb (跑得快) it is the particle de.

13.2.5 得 versus 必须 and 要

- 必须 is stronger and more formal: 你必须带身份证.
- 要 can mean "need to / will": 我要去银行. 得 is the casual "have to".

你必须带身份证。
nǐ bì xū dài shēn fèn zhèng
Word guide: 你 – you; 必须 – must; 带 – bring; 身份证 – ID.

13.2.6 Recap

- **得 (děi) + Verb** = have to, must (spoken).
- Negative = 不用; formal = 必须. After a verb, 得 = de (complement).

Practise this pattern step by step.

13.3 ■ Practice without the models

13.3.1 不用 (don't need to)

1301.1 Reassure: "You don't need to come early." 你 …… 早来。

1301.2 A sign says you mustn't take photos. Which fits? 这里 _____ 拍照。

- A. 不用
- B. 没用
- C. 不得不
- D. 不能

1301.3 Build: "No need, thanks."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 谢谢。/ 不用了

1301.4 不用去了 sounds lighter than 别去.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1301.5 You take a friend to lunch, and she reaches for her wallet. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

13.3.2 得 (děi) (must / have to)

1302.1 Complete (spoken): “I have to go now.” 我 …… 走了。

1302.2 Which says “You don’t have to come”?

- A. 你不用来。
- B. 你不必须来。
- C. 你不得来。
- D. 你得不来。

1302.3 Build: “There’s an exam tomorrow; I have to revise.”

Arrange all chunks: 明天有考试 / ， / 复习。/ 我得

1302.4 In 他跑得很快, 得 is read děi.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1302.5 It is 9 p.m. and you still have an essay due tomorrow morning. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

13.4 ■ Answers and explanations

13.4.1 不用 (don't need to)

1301.1 不用

不用 + verb = no need to.

1301.2 D. 不能

Prohibition is 不能; 不用 means no need.

1301.3 不用了，谢谢。

A polite refusal.

1301.4 True.

不用 says it is unnecessary; 别 is an order.

1301.5 One possible response: 不用给钱，我请客。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不用 + Verb means "no need to"; "mustn't" is 不能 / 不可以: 这里不能抽烟.
- 不用 + noun can mean "don't use": 不用筷子 – "not use chopsticks". Check whether a verb or noun follows.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

13.4.2 得 (děi) (must / have to)

1302.1 得

得 (děi) + verb = must.

1302.2 A. 你不用来。

The negative of 得 (must) is 不用.

1302.3 明天有考试，我得复习。

Reason, then 得 + verb.

1302.4 False.

After a verb, 得 is the particle de.

1302.5 One possible response: 我得走了，今天晚上得写完论文。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "Don't have to" is 不用, never 不得: 你不用来, not 你不得来.

- Read it děi only before a verb meaning “must”; after a verb (跑得快) it is the particle de.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14 Verb phrases

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

14.1 ■ 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

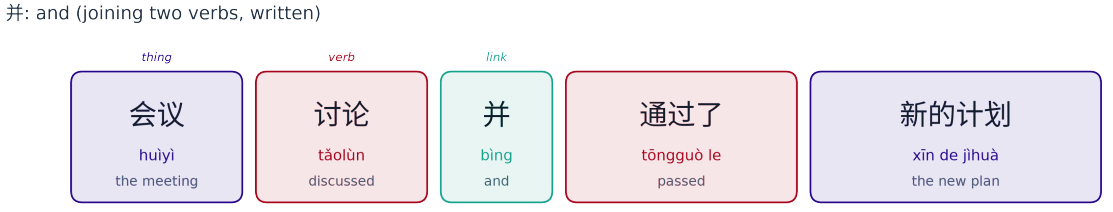
14.1.1 What the meeting did

- You are writing the minutes of a school meeting.
- **会议讨论并通过了新的计划。** – "The meeting discussed and approved the new plan."

14.1.2 Verb phrase 1 + 并 / 并且 + Verb phrase 2

- **并 / 并且** join two actions done by the same subject, often in sequence: "and (also)".
- It is written style, common in reports and formal notices.

他学习了新方法，并用在工作中。
tā xué xí le xīn fāng fǎ bìng yòng zài gōng zuò zhōng
Word guide: 他 – he; 学习 – studied; 新 – the new; 方法 – method; 并 – and; 用 – used; 在 – in; 工作 – work; 中 – (in).



14.1.3 Two steps by one subject

- **请填写这张表，并交给前台。** – "Please fill in this form and hand it to reception."
- **公司调查了这个问题，并且找到了原因。** – "The company investigated the problem and found the cause."

请填写这张表，并交给前台。
qǐng tián xiě zhè zhāng biǎo bìng jiāo gěi qián tái
Word guide: 请 – please; 填写 – fill in; 这张 – this; 表 – form; 并 – and; 交给 – hand to; 前台 – reception.

14.1.4 Verbs, not nouns

- 并 / 并且 join verb phrases; to join nouns use 和: 老师和学生, not 老师并学生.
- Keep one subject: the same person or group does both actions.

14.1.5 并 + verb versus 并 + 不

- 并 + verb phrase = “and”: 讨论并通过.
- 并 + 不 / 没 = “actually not”: 他并不知道. Check whether a negative follows.

他并不知道。
tā bìng bù zhī dào
Word guide: 他 – he; 并 – actually; 不 – not; 知道 – know.

14.1.6 Recap

- **VP1 + 并 / 并且 + VP2** = and (also), same subject, written style.
- Nouns take 和; 并 + 不/没 = actually not.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.2 ■ 少 + Verb (do less)

14.2.1 Doctor’s orders

- Your doctor looks at your test results and gives you some advice.
- **你应该少吃甜的，多运动。** – “You should eat less sugar and exercise more.”

14.2.2 少 + Verb = do less

- **少 + Verb** = do less of it: 少吃, 少喝, 少说.
- 少 goes directly before the verb, like an adverb.

晚上少喝咖啡。
wǎn shang shǎo hē kā fēi
Word guide: 晚上 – in the evening; 少 – less; 喝 – drink; 咖啡 – coffee.



14.2.3 Advice and quantity

- With an amount: **少放一点儿盐。** – “Put in a little less salt.”
- **你少说两句吧！** – “Say less (stop talking)!” – a firm request.

少放一点儿盐。
shǎo fàng yì diǎnr yán
Word guide: 少 – less; 放 – put in; 一点儿 – a little; 盐 – salt.

14.2.4 Before the verb

- “Eat less” is 少吃, not 吃少: 吃少了 means “ate too little”.
- An amount comes after the verb: 少吃一点儿, 少喝两杯.

14.2.5 少 + Verb versus 不 + Verb

- 少吃肉 = eat less meat (some is fine).
- 不吃肉 = don’t eat meat at all.

他不吃肉。
tā bù chī ròu
Word guide: 他 – he; 不 – doesn’t; 吃 – eat; 肉 – meat.

14.2.6 Recap

- **少 + Verb (+ amount)** = do less: 少吃, 少放一点儿.
- 少 goes before the verb; 吃少了 = ate too little; 不 + Verb = not at all.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.3 ■ 多 + Verb (do more)

14.3.1 Getting fitter

- Your PE teacher gives the class some advice before the fitness test.
- **大家要多喝水，多休息。** – “Everyone should drink more water and rest more.”

14.3.2 多 + Verb = do more

- **多 + Verb** = do more of it: 多练习, 多吃水果, 多看书.
- 多 goes directly before the verb, like an adverb.

你应该多吃水果。
nǐ yīng gāi duō chī shuǐ guǒ
Word guide: 你 – you; 应该 – should; 多 – more; 吃 – eat; 水果 – fruit.



14.3.3 With an amount after the verb

- **我多买了两个。** – "I bought two extra."
- **多穿一件衣服，外面很冷。** – "Put on an extra layer; it's cold outside."

多穿一件衣服，外面很冷。
duō chuān yí jiàn yī fu wài miàn hěn lěng
Word guide: 多 – more; 穿 – wear; 一件 – one; 衣服 – layer; 外面 – outside; 很 – very; 冷 – cold.

14.3.4 Before the verb

- "Practise more" is 多练习, not 练习多: 练习多了 suggests "practised a lot".
- The extra amount goes after the verb: 多住几天 – "stay a few more days".

14.3.5 多 + Verb versus 很多

- 多 + Verb = do more (advice): 多看.
- 很多 + noun = a lot of: 看了很多书 – "read a lot of books".

他看了很多书。
tā kàn le hěn duō shū
Word guide: 他 – he; 看 – read; 很多 – many; 书 – books.

14.3.6 Recap

- **多 + Verb (+ amount)** = do more / extra: 多练习, 多买两个.
- 多 before the verb; 很多 + noun = a lot of.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.4 ■ 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

14.4.1 Who's in charge?

- Your teacher divides the work for the class trip.
- **这次活动由小王负责。** – "Xiao Wang is in charge of this event."

14.4.2 Task + 由 + person + Verb

- **由 + person + Verb** = "by, (is done) by": it names who is responsible for a task.
- The task comes first as the topic: 晚饭由我做 – "Dinner will be made by me."

晚饭由我来做。
wǎn fàn yóu wǒ lái zuò
Word guide: 晚饭 – dinner; 由 – by; 我 – me; 来 – (to); 做 – make.

由 + person + 负责: handled by



14.4.3 Responsibility and composition

- **会议由校长主持。** – "The meeting is chaired by the head teacher."
- 由 … 组成 = be made up of: **这个队由十个人组成。** – "The team is made up of ten people."

这个队由十个人组成。
zhè ge duì yóu shí gè rén zǔ chéng
Word guide: 这个 – this; 队 – team; 由 – of; 十个 – ten; 人 – people; 组成 – is made up.

14.4.4 由 is not 被

- 由 names who is responsible; 被 reports something done to the subject, often unwelcome: 他被批评了.
- 由 sentences usually need no 了 or result complement: 由他负责.

14.4.5 由 = from (a starting point)

- 由 can also mean "from" in writing: 由北京出发 – "set off from Beijing".
- 由于 is a different word: "due to, because of".

我们由北京出发。
wǒ men yóu Běi jīng chū fā
Word guide: 我们 – we; 由 – from; 北京 – Beijing; 出发 – set off.

14.4.6 Recap

- **Task + 由 + person + Verb** = done by / in the charge of; **由 … 组成** = made up of.
- 由 names responsibility; 被 is the passive of something done to someone.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.5 ■ 并且 (moreover / and also)

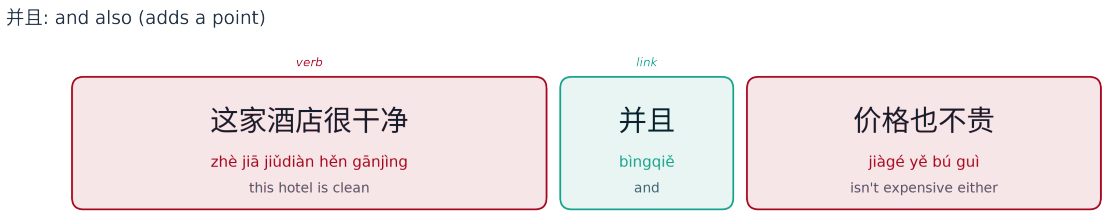
14.5.1 Good, and good value too

- In your review of a hotel, you want to add a second, separate strength.
- **这家酒店很干净，并且价格也不贵。** – "This hotel is clean, and moreover the price isn't high."

14.5.2 Clause，并且 + clause = moreover

- **并且** adds a further point, often building on the first: "and moreover, and also".
- It starts the second clause; 也 / 还 often follow in that clause.

他会说英语，并且说得很好。
tā huì shuō Yīng yǔ bìng qiě shuō de hěn hǎo
Word guide: 他 – he; 会 – can; 说 – speak; 英语 – English; 并且 – and moreover; 说 – speaks; 很 – very; 好 – well.



14.5.3 Adding a stronger point

- **他按时完成了任务，并且做得非常好。** – "He finished the task on time, and did it very well too."
- It is close to 而且, a little more written.

他按时完成了任务，并且做得很好。
tā àn shí wán chéng le rèn wu bìng qiě zuò de hěn hǎo
Word guide: 他 – he; 按时 – on time; 完成 – finished; 任务 – the task; 并且 – and moreover; 做 – did it; 很 – very; 好 – well.

14.5.4 Same direction

- Both points must point the same way (both good or both bad); for a contrast use 但是.
- 并且 does not join two nouns: 苹果和香蕉, not 苹果并且香蕉.

14.5.5 并且 versus 而且

- 而且 is very common in speech and pairs with 不但: 不但便宜，而且好吃.
- 并且 suits writing and lists of actions or facts; both mean "moreover".

不但便宜，而且好吃。

bú dàn pián yi ér qiě hǎo chī
Word guide: 不但 – not only; 便宜 – cheap; 而且 – but also; 好吃 – tasty.

14.5.6 Recap

- **Clause，并且 + clause** = and moreover, adding a point in the same direction.
- Close to 而且 (more spoken); contrasts take 但是; nouns take 和.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.6 ■ 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

14.6.1 Planning a trip west

- Friends are planning a trip to Xinjiang and ask whether you know the region.
- **我从来没去过新疆。** – "I've never been to Xinjiang."

14.6.2 从来没 + Verb + 过 = never (once)

- For experience, **从来没 (有) + Verb + 过** = "have never done": 从来没见过, 从来没听说过.
- For habits or rules, **从来不 + Verb**: 他从来不喝咖啡.

我从来没听说过这个地方。
wǒ cóng lái méi tīng shuō guo zhè ge dì fang
Word guide: 我 – I; 从来 – ever; 没 – not; 听说 – hear of; 过 – (experience); 这个 – this; 地方 – place.



14.6.3 Never versus not yet

- **我还没去过。** – "I haven't been yet (but I might)."
- **我从来没去过。** – "I've never once been." 从来 stresses the whole of the past.

我还没去过。
wǒ hái méi qù guo
Word guide: 我 – I; 还 – yet; 没 – not; 去 – go; 过 – (experience).

14.6.4 Keep 过 and choose 没 or 不

- Experience: 从来没 + V + 过; habit: 从来不 + V. Do not mix: 从来不去过 is wrong.
- Use 过 for the experiential model here. Other predicates can form complete 从来没 statements without 过; there is no universal requirement.

14.6.5 从来没 versus 一直没

- 一直没 = "hasn't … all this time" (up to now, a specific wait): 他一直没回我消息.
- 从来没 = "never, in one's whole experience": 他从来没迟到过.

他一直没回我消息。
tā yì zhí méi huí wǒ xiāo xi
Word guide: 他 – he; 一直 – all this time; 没 – hasn't; 回 – replied to; 我 – my; 消息 – message.

14.6.6 Recap

- **从来没 + V + 过** = never (experience); **从来不 + V** = never (habit).
- 还没 = not yet; 一直没 = not during this whole stretch.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.7 ■ 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

14.7.1 Is it worth visiting?

- A friend asks whether the Forbidden City is worth the long queue.
- **故宫很值得去。** – "The Forbidden City is well worth a visit."

14.7.2 值得 + Verb = worth doing

- **A + 值得 + Verb** = A is worth doing: 值得看, 值得一去, 值得学习.
- 很 / 非常 can go before it: 很值得.

这本书值得一看。
zhè běn shū zhí de yí kàn
Word guide: 这 – this; 本 – (measure word); 书 – book; 值得 – is worth; 一看 – a read.



14.7.3 Worth it or not

- **这个问题值得我们讨论。** – "This question deserves our discussion."
- Negative: **为这点儿小事生气，不值得。** – "It's not worth getting angry over something so small."

为这点儿小事生气，不值得。
wèi zhè diǎnr xiǎo shì shēng qì bù zhí de
Word guide: 为 – over; 这 – this; 点儿 – little; 小事 – matter; 生气 – get angry; 不 – not; 值得 – worth it.

14.7.4 The thing comes first

- Put what is worth it first: 这本书值得看, not 值得这本书看.
- The negative is 不值得, not 没值得.

14.7.5 值得 versus 值

- 值 + amount = be worth (money): 这块手表值一万块 – "This watch is worth 10,000 yuan."
- 值得 + verb = worth doing.

这块手表值一万块。
zhè kuài shǒu biǎo zhí yí wàn kuài
Word guide: 这块 – this; 手表 – watch; 值 – is worth; 一万 – 10,000; 块 – yuan.

14.7.6 Recap

- **A + 值得 + Verb** = A is worth doing; negative 不值得.
- 值 + amount = worth (in money).

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.8 ■ Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

14.8.1 Up all night

- Your roommate had a deadline and you could see her light under the door.
- **她昨天工作到凌晨三点。** – "She worked until three in the morning yesterday."

14.8.2 Verb + 到 + time / event

- **Verb + 到 + end point** = do something until then: 睡到十点, 等到明天, 学到晚上.
- The end point goes after 到, right after the verb.

他周末常常睡到中午。
tā zhōu mò cháng cháng shuì dào zhōng wǔ
Word guide: 他 – he; 周末 – at weekends; 常常 – often; 睡 – sleep; 到 – until; 中午 – noon.



14.8.3 Until an event

- **我们等到雨停了才出发。** – "We waited until the rain stopped before setting off."
- **他一直工作到退休。** – "He kept working until he retired."

我们等到雨停了才出发。
wǒ men děng dào yǔ tíng le cái chū fā
Word guide: 我们 – we; 等 – wait; 到 – until; 雨 – the rain; 停 – stop; 才 – only then; 出发 – set off.

14.8.4 Verb first, then 到

- Say 睡到十点, not 到十点睡 (that means "go to bed at ten").
- With an object, repeat the verb or put the object first: 看书看到很晚 / 书看到很晚.

14.8.5 Verb + 到 versus 直到 … 才

- Verb + 到 gives the end point neutrally: 玩到十点.
- 直到 … 才 … stresses that something happened only at that late point: 直到十点他才回家.

直到十点他才回家。
zhí dào shí diǎn tā cái huí jiā
Word guide: 直到 – not until; 十点 – ten; 他 – he; 才 – only then; 回家 – went home.

14.8.6 Recap

- **Verb + 到 + time / event** = do it until then: 工作到三点, 等到雨停.
- Verb before 到; with an object, repeat the verb. 直到 … 才 stresses lateness.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.9 ■ 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

14.9.1 All because of you

- Your brother hid your alarm clock as a joke, and you missed your train.
- **你害得我迟到了!** – "You made me late!" 害得 blames someone for a bad result.

14.9.2 A + 害得 + B + bad result

- **害得** = “cause someone to suffer, make (something bad) happen to”: the result is always unwelcome.
- The result comes after the person: 害得我没赶上车.

他害得我没赶上车。
tā hài de wǒ méi gǎn shàng chē
Word guide: 他 – he; 害得 – caused; 我 – me; 没 – not; 赶上 – catch; 车 – the bus.



14.9.3 Causes that are things

- **这场大雨害得我们在机场等了五个小时。** – “This rainstorm made us wait five hours at the airport.”
- **你一直不回消息，害得我很担心。** – “You didn’t reply all day, and it made me really worried.”

这场大雨害得我们等了五个小时。
zhè chǎng dà yǔ hài de wǒ men děng le wǔ gè xiǎo shí
Word guide: 这场 – this; 大雨 – rainstorm; 害得 – caused; 我们 – us; 等 – wait; 五个 – five; 小时 – hours.

14.9.4 Only bad results

- Do not use 害得 for good outcomes; for neutral or good causes use 让 / 使: 他的话让我很高兴.
- Keep the person after 害得: 害得我迟到, not 害得迟到我.

14.9.5 害得 versus 让

- 让 is neutral: 这个消息让我很难过 – “This news made me sad.”
- 害得 adds blame: 你害得我很难过 – “You made me so upset (it’s your fault).”

这个消息让我很难过。
zhè ge xiāo xi ràng wǒ hěn nán guò
Word guide: 这个 – this; 消息 – news; 让 – made; 我 – me; 很 – very; 难过 – sad.

14.9.6 Recap

- **A + 害得 + B + bad result** = A caused B to suffer (with blame).
- Bad results only; neutral causes take 让 / 使.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.10 ■ Separable verbs (离合词)

14.10.1 A verb that splits in two

- You tell a friend you went swimming twice this week and had a haircut too.
- **我理了一次发，游了两次泳。** – "I had my hair cut once and went swimming twice."

14.10.2 Verb-object words (离合词)

- Some words are really **verb + object** in one word: 游泳 (swim), 见面 (meet: see + face), 睡觉 (sleep), 帮忙 (help: help + task).
- Words like 了, 过, amounts and 的 go **between** the two parts: 见了面, 睡了一个小时觉.

我们见过面。
wǒ men jiàn guo miàn
Word guide: 我们 – we; 见 – met; 过 – (before); 面 – face.

A split verb: the count goes in the middle



14.10.3 No second object

- Because they already contain an object, they cannot take another: **跟朋友见面**, not 见面朋友.
- Use a preposition for the person: **帮我一个忙** / **给他帮忙**, not 帮忙他.

我明天跟朋友见面。
wǒ míng tiān gēn péng you jiàn miàn
Word guide: 我 – I; 明天 – tomorrow; 跟 – with; 朋友 – a friend; 见面 – meet.

14.10.4 Two classic errors

- Do not add an object after them: 跟他见面, not 见面他; 给我帮忙, not 帮忙我.
- Put duration and 了 inside: 睡了八个小时觉 or 睡觉睡了八个小时, not 睡觉了八个小时.

14.10.5 Common separable verbs

- 结婚 (marry): 跟她结婚, 结过两次婚. 生气 (get angry): 生他的气 – "be angry with him".
- 上课, 毕业, 洗澡, 唱歌, 跳舞 work the same way: 唱了一首歌.

别生他的气。
bié shēng tā de qì
Word guide: 别 – don't; 生 – be; 他 – him; 的 – (at); 气 – angry.

14.10.6 Recap

- **离合词** = verb + object in one word (游泳, 见面, 帮忙, 睡觉): 了 / 过 / amounts go inside.
- No extra object: use 跟 / 给 + person, or 生 … 的气.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.11 ■ V 着 V 着就 … 了 (while …-ing, suddenly)

14.11.1 Asleep in front of the TV

- Your dad was watching a film after dinner. When you came back, he was snoring.
- **他看着看着就睡着了。** – "He was watching and watching, and then he fell asleep."

14.11.2 V 着 V 着就 + new event + 了

- **V 着 V 着，就 … 了** = while doing V (for a while), something new happened without planning.
- The first action continues; the second appears suddenly.

她说着说着就哭了。
tā shuō zhe shuō zhe jiù kū le
Word guide: 她 – she; 说 – talk; 着 – (ongoing); 说 – talk; 着 – (ongoing); 就 – then; 哭 – cry.



14.11.3 Stories and surprises

- **我们走着走着，就迷路了。** – "We were walking along, and before we knew it we were lost."
- **孩子玩着玩着就笑了起来。** – "While playing, the child started laughing."

我们走着走着就迷路了。
wǒ men zǒu zhe zǒu zhe jiù mí lù le
Word guide: 我们 – we; 走 – walk; 着 – (ongoing); 走 – walk; 着 – (ongoing); 就 – then; 迷路 – get lost.

14.11.4 One-syllable verb, past events

- Use a one-syllable verb, repeated with 着 each time: 看着看着, not 看看着着.
- It describes what happened in the past (a story), so the second part ends with 了.

14.11.5 Versus 一边 … 一边 …

- 一边 … 一边 … = two actions at once, both planned: 一边吃一边看.
- V 着 V 着就 … = a new event slips in while one action goes on: 吃着吃着就睡着了.

他一边吃一边看电视。
tā yì biān chī yì biān kàn diàn shì
Word guide: 他 – he; 一边 – while; 吃 – eating; 一边 – (also); 看 – watches; 电视 – TV.

14.11.6 Recap

- **V 着 V 着，就 + new event + 了** = while doing V, (unexpectedly) …
- One-syllable verb, past story, 了 at the end. 一边 … 一边 … = two planned actions.

Practise this pattern step by step.

14.12 ■ Practice without the models

14.12.1 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

1401.1 Complete (written): "Please read the notice and sign it." 请阅读通知，……签名。

1401.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我并买了苹果并香蕉。
- B. 我买了苹果并香蕉。
- C. 我买了并苹果和香蕉。
- D. 我买了苹果和香蕉。

1401.3 Build: "The meeting discussed and approved the plan."

Arrange all chunks: 并通过了 / 讨论 / 会议 / 计划。

1401.4 In 他并不知道, 并 means "and".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1401.5 You are writing the minutes of a school meeting. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.2 少 + Verb (do less)

1402.1 Advise: "Play less on your phone." …… 玩手机。

1402.2 What does 我吃少了 mean?

- A. I should eat less.
- B. I ate less than before on purpose.
- C. I ate too little.
- D. I don't eat.

1402.3 Build: "Put in a little less salt."

Arrange all chunks: 一点儿 / 盐。 / 放 / 少

1402.4 少吃肉 means "don't eat meat at all".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1402.5 Your doctor looks at your test results and gives you some advice. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.3 多 + Verb (do more)

1403.1 Advise: "Practise speaking more." …… 练习口语。

1403.2 Which says "Stay a few more days"?

- A. 住几天多。
- B. 很多住几天。
- C. 住多几天。
- D. 多住几天。

1403.3 Build: "Put on an extra layer."

Arrange all chunks: 一件 / 衣服。 / 多 / 穿

1403.4 In 看了很多书, 很多 describes the books.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1403.5 Your PE teacher gives the class some advice before the fitness test. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.4 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

1404.1 Complete: “This matter will be handled by me.” 这件事 …… 我来处理。

1404.2 Which says “He was criticised by the teacher”?

- A. 他被老师批评了。
- B. 他由老师批评了。
- C. 他由批评老师。
- D. 老师由他批评。

1404.3 Build: “The team is made up of ten people.”

Arrange all chunks: 组成。 / 由十个人 / 这个队

1404.4 由北京出发 means “set off from Beijing”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1404.5 Your teacher divides the work for the class trip. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.5 并且 (moreover / and also)

1405.1 Complete (written): “The room is big, and moreover it is bright.” 房间很大，…… 很亮。

1405.2 Which sentence is natural?

- A. 他很聪明，并且很努力。
- B. 他并且聪明很努力。
- C. 他很聪明，并且不聪明。
- D. 他很聪明，并且很懒。

1405.3 Build: “He finished on time, and did it very well too.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 并且 / 他按时完成了任务 / 做得很好。

1405.4 不但 pairs naturally with 而且.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1405.5 In your review of a hotel, you want to add a second, separate strength. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.6 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

1406.1 Complete: “I’ve never heard of this place.” 我从来没听说 …… 这个地方。

1406.2 You plan to visit Xi’an next month but haven’t been yet. Which fits?

- A. 我一直去西安。

- B. 我还没去过西安。
- C. 我从来没去过西安。
- D. 我从来不去西安。

1406.3 Build: “I’ve never been to Xinjiang.”

Arrange all chunks: 新疆。 / 从来没 / 我 / 去过

1406.4 他从来不去过 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1406.5 Friends are planning a trip to Xinjiang and ask whether you know the region. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.7 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

1407.1 Complete: “This film is worth seeing.” 这部电影 …… 看。

1407.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这个地方去值得。
- B. 值得这个地方去。
- C. 这个地方值得去。
- D. 这个地方没值得去。

1407.3 Build: “It’s not worth getting angry.”

Arrange all chunks: 生气 / 不 / 值得。 / ，

1407.4 这块手表值一万块 uses 值 for a money value.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1407.5 A friend asks whether the Forbidden City is worth the long queue. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.8 Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

1408.1 Complete: “I slept until ten.” 我睡 …… 十点。

1408.2 Which says “He read until midnight”?

- A. 他看到书半夜。
- B. 他半夜到看书。
- C. 他看书看到半夜。
- D. 他到半夜看书。

1408.3 Build: “He kept working until he retired.”

Arrange all chunks: 退休。 / 一直 / 工作到 / 他

1408.4 到十点睡 means “sleep until ten”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1408.5 Your roommate had a deadline and you could see her light under the door. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.9 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

1409.1 Blame: “You made me miss the film!” 你 …… 我没看上电影!

1409.2 Which sentence is natural?

- A. 堵车害得我们迟到了。
- B. 老师的表扬害得我很高兴。
- C. 他害得我考了第一名。
- D. 好天气害得我们去爬山。

1409.3 Build: “You didn’t reply, and it made me worried.”

Arrange all chunks: 很担心。 / ， / 你不回消息 / 害得我

1409.4 害得 adds blame that 让 does not.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1409.5 Your brother hid your alarm clock as a joke, and you missed your train. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.10 Separable verbs (离合词)

1410.1 Complete: “We have met before.” 我们见 …… 面。

1410.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我想见面你。
- B. 我想跟你见面。
- C. 我想见你面。
- D. 我想面见你了。

1410.3 Build: “Could you do me a favour?”

Arrange all chunks: 你能 / 一个 / 帮我 / 忙吗?

1410.4 他结过两次婚 puts the amount inside 结婚.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1410.5 You tell a friend you went swimming twice this week and had a haircut too.

Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.12.11 V 着 V 着就 ... 了 (while ...-ing, suddenly)

1411.1 Complete: "While reading, she fell asleep." 她看着看着 …… 睡着了。

1411.2 Which form is correct?

- A. 他走着走着就到了。
- B. 他着走着走就到了。
- C. 他走走着着就到了。
- D. 他走着就走着到了。

1411.3 Build: "We were walking, and before we knew it we were lost."

Arrange all chunks: 我们 / 就 / 迷路了。/ 走着走着

1411.4 V 着 V 着就 … describes two planned actions done together.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1411.5 Your dad was watching a film after dinner. When you came back, he was snoring. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

14.13 ■ Answers and explanations

14.13.1 并 / 并且 (combining verbs: and)

1401.1 并

并 joins two actions by the same subject.

1401.2 D. 我买了苹果和香蕉。

我买了苹果和香蕉 is right: 和 joins nouns. 并 joins verbs or clauses ("and also"), so it cannot join 苹果 and 香蕉.

1401.3 会议讨论并通过了计划。

VP1 + 并 + VP2.

1401.4 False.

False. Before a negative, 并 strengthens it and corrects an assumption: 他并不知道 "He actually doesn't know (as you might think)." It does not mean "and" here.

1401.5 One possible response: 会议讨论并通过了新的计划。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 并 / 并且 join verb phrases; to join nouns use 和: 老师和学生, not 老师并学生.
- Keep one subject: the same person or group does both actions.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.2 少 + Verb (do less)

1402.1 少

少 + verb = do less.

1402.2 C. I ate too little.

Verb + 少了 = did too little; advice is 少 + verb.

1402.3 少放一点儿盐。

少 + verb + amount + object.

1402.4 False.

少吃 = eat less; 不吃 = not at all.

1402.5 One possible response: 你应该少吃甜的，多运动。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "Eat less" is 少吃, not 吃少: 吃少了 means "ate too little".

- An amount comes after the verb: 少吃一点儿, 少喝两杯.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.3 多 + Verb (do more)

1403.1 多

多 + verb = do more.

1403.2 D. 多住几天。

多 goes before the verb, then the amount: 多住几天 "stay a few more days". Putting 多 after the verb (住多几天) is a common error from English word order.

1403.3 多穿一件衣服。

多 + verb + amount + noun.

1403.4 True.

很多 + noun = many / a lot of.

1403.5 One possible response: 大家要多喝水，多休息。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- "Practise more" is 多练习, not 练习多: 练习多了 suggests "practised a lot".
- The extra amount goes after the verb: 多住几天 – "stay a few more days".
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.4 由 + Person + Verb (done by)

1404.1 由

Task + 由 + person + verb.

1404.2 A. 他被老师批评了。

Something done to someone (often unwelcome) takes 被.

1404.3 这个队由十个人组成。

由 … 组成 = be made up of.

1404.4 True.

In writing, 由 can mean "from".

1404.5 One possible response: 这次活动由小王负责。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 由 names who is responsible; 被 reports something done to the subject, often unwelcome: 他被批评了.
- 由 sentences usually need no 了 or result complement: 由他负责.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.5 并且 (moreover / and also)

1405.1 并且

并且 adds a point in the same direction.

1405.2 A. 他很聪明，并且很努力。

Both points should point the same way.

1405.3 他按时完成了任务，并且做得很好。

Clause, 并且 + further point.

1405.4 True.

不但 … 而且 … is the standard pair.

1405.5 One possible response: 这家酒店很干净，并且价格也不贵。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Both points must point the same way (both good or both bad); for a contrast use 但是.
- 并且 does not join two nouns: 苹果和香蕉, not 苹果并且香蕉.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.6 从来 + 不 / 没 (never)

1406.1 过

从来没 + verb + 过.

1406.2 B. 我还没去过西安。

Not yet (but planned) = 还没.

1406.3 我从来没去过新疆。

从来没 + verb + 过 + place.

1406.4 False.

Experience takes 从来没 … 过; habit takes 从来不.

1406.5 One possible response: 我从来没去过新疆。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Experience: 从来没 + V + 过; habit: 从来不 + V. Do not mix: 从来不去过 is wrong.
- Use 过 for the experiential model here. Other predicates can form complete 从来没 statements without 过; there is no universal requirement.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.7 值得 + Verb (worth doing)

1407.1 值得

A + 值得 + verb.

1407.2 C. 这个地方值得去。

这个地方值得去 is right: the thing comes first, then 值得 + verb. The negative is 不值得, not 没值得, and the verb cannot come before 值得.

1407.3 生气，不值得。

Action, then 不值得.

1407.4 True.

值 + amount = worth in money.

1407.5 One possible response: 故宫很值得去。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put what is worth it first: 这本书值得看, not 值得这本书看.
- The negative is 不值得, not 没值得.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.8 Verb + 到 + Time / Event (until)

1408.1 到

Verb + 到 + end point.

1408.2 C. 他看书看到半夜。

With an object, repeat the verb: 看书看到半夜.

1408.3 他一直工作到退休。

一直 + verb + 到 + event.

1408.4 False.

That means "go to bed at ten"; "sleep until ten" is 睡到十点.

1408.5 One possible response: 她昨天工作到凌晨三点。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say 睡到十点, not 到十点睡 (that means "go to bed at ten").
- With an object, repeat the verb or put the object first: 看书看到很晚 / 书看到很晚.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.9 害得 (cause sb to suffer)

1409.1 害得

害得 + person + bad result.

1409.2 A. 堵车害得我们迟到了。

害得 is for unwelcome results.

1409.3 你不回消息，害得我很担心。

Cause, 害得 + person + result.

1409.4 True.

让 is neutral; 害得 blames the cause.

1409.5 One possible response: 你害得我迟到了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not use 害得 for good outcomes; for neutral or good causes use 让 / 使: 他的话让我很高兴.
- Keep the person after 害得: 害得我迟到, not 害得迟到我.

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.10 Separable verbs (离合词)

1410.1 过

过 goes inside the verb-object word: 见过面.

1410.2 B. 我想跟你见面。

见面 cannot take another object; use 跟 + person.

1410.3 你能帮我一个忙吗?

帮 + person + 一个 + 忙.

1410.4 True.

Separable verbs take 过 and amounts in the middle.

1410.5 One possible response: 我理了一次发，游了两次泳。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Do not add an object after them: 跟他见面, not 见面他; 给我帮忙, not 帮忙我.
- Put duration and 了 inside: 睡了八个小时觉 or 睡觉睡了八个小时, not 睡觉了八个小时.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

14.13.11 V 着 V 着就 ... 了 (while ...-ing, suddenly)

1411.1 就

V 着 V 着就 + new event + 了.

1411.2 A. 他走着走着就到了。

Verb + 着 + verb + 着 + 就 shows that while doing one thing, something else happened: 他走着走着就到了 "He kept walking and before he knew it he had arrived."

1411.3 我们走着走着就迷路了。

Subject + V 着 V 着 + 就 + result + 了.

1411.4 False.

That is 一边 … 一边 …; V 着 V 着就 has an unplanned new event.

1411.5 One possible response: 他看着看着就睡着了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use a one-syllable verb, repeated with 着 each time: 看着看着, not 看看着着.
- It describes what happened in the past (a story), so the second part ends with 了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

15 ”But” Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

15.1 ■ 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

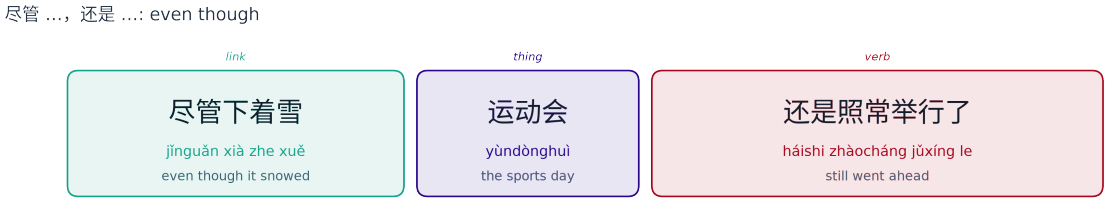
15.1.1 Despite the snow

- The school sports day went ahead even though it was snowing.
- **尽管下着雪，运动会还是照常举行了。** – “Although it was snowing, the sports day still went ahead as planned.”

15.1.2 尽管 A，但是 / 可是 / 还是 B

- **尽管 A，(但是) B** = “although / despite A, B”: the fact A does not stop B.
- The second clause often has 但是, 可是, 还是, 也 or 却.

尽管很累，但是他还是坚持跑完了。
jǐn guǎn hěn lèi dàn shì tā hái shi jiān chí pǎo wán le
Word guide: 尽管 – although; 很 – very; 累 – tired; 但是 – but; 他 – he; 还是 – still; 坚持 – kept; 跑 – running; 完 – to the end.



15.1.3 A fact, not a possibility

- **尽管他很努力，可是成绩还是不太好。** – “Although he works hard, his grades still aren’t very good.”
- 尽管 states something true; for “even if” (maybe true), use 即使.

尽管他很努力，可是成绩还是不太好。
jǐn guǎn tā hěn nǔ lì kě shì chéng jì hái shi bú tài hǎo
Word guide: 尽管 – although; 他 – he; 很 – very; 努力 – hard-working; 可是 – but; 成绩 – grades; 还是 – still; 不太 – not very; 好 – good.

15.1.4 尽管 versus 尽管 + Verb

- 尽管 at the start of a clause = “although”. Before a verb, 尽管 = “feel free to”: 有问题尽管问.
- Do not combine 尽管 with 即使 or 虽然 in the same clause; one is enough.

15.1.5 尽管 versus 虽然

- 虽然 is the everyday "although": 虽然下雨，我们还是去了.
- 尽管 is a bit stronger and more formal, and stresses that the fact really holds.

虽然下雨，我们还是去了。
suī rán xià yǔ wǒ men hái shi qù le
Word guide: 虽然 – although; 下雨 – it rained; 我们 – we; 还是 – still; 去 – went.

15.1.6 Recap

- **尽管 A，但是 / 还是 B** = although A (a fact), B anyway.
- 尽管 + Verb = feel free to; 即使 = even if (hypothetical).

Practise this pattern step by step.

15.2 ■ 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

15.2.1 Not what you'd expect

- Your friend expected the small restaurant to be cheap, but it was pricey and the fancy one was cheap.
- **这家小饭馆倒挺贵的。** – "This little restaurant is actually quite expensive (surprisingly)."

15.2.2 倒 + predicate = actually, contrary to expectation

- **倒** marks a result opposite to what you would expect: "actually, on the contrary".
- It sits after the subject, before the verb or adjective: 他倒不着急.

大家都很担心，他倒不着急。
dà jiā dōu hěn dān xīn tā dào bù zháo jí
Word guide: 大家 – everyone; 都 – all; 很 – very; 担心 – worried; 他 – he; 倒 – actually; 不 – not; 着急 – anxious.



15.2.3 Softening or conceding

- **东西倒是不错，就是太贵了。** – "The goods are fine, it's just that they're too expensive." (倒是 concedes a point before a "but")
- **你说得倒容易！** – "That's easy for you to say!" (ironic)

东西倒是不错，就是太贵了。
dōng xi dào shì bú cuò jiù shì tài guì le
Word guide: 东西 – the goods; 倒是 – admittedly; 不错 – fine; 就是 – it's just that; 太 – too; 贵 – expensive.

15.2.4 Contrast with an expectation

- 倒 needs an expectation to go against (stated or obvious); without one it sounds odd.
- It goes after the subject: 他倒不着急, not 倒他不着急.

15.2.5 倒 versus 却 and 反而

- 却 = "but, yet", a plain contrast: 他很累，却睡不着.
- 反而 = "on the contrary, instead", stronger: 吃了药，病反而更重了.

吃了药，病反而更重了。
chī le yào bìng fǎn ér gèng zhòng le
Word guide: 吃 – take; 药 – medicine; 病 – the illness; 反而 – instead; 更 – even more; 重 – serious.

15.2.6 Recap

- **倒 + predicate** = actually (contrary to expectation); **倒是 …，就是 …** = granted …, but ….
- 却 = plain contrast; 反而 = the opposite happened.

Practise this pattern step by step.

15.3 ■ 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

15.3.1 Tired but awake

- After a long day you lie in bed, exhausted, but your mind won't stop.
- **我很累，却睡不着。** – "I'm exhausted, yet I can't sleep."

15.3.2 Subject + 却 + predicate = yet, however

- **却** marks a contrast and goes after the subject of the second clause, before the verb.
- 他很有钱，却不快乐 – "He's rich, but he isn't happy."

他很有钱，却不快乐。
tā hěn yǒu qián què bú kuài lè
Word guide: 他 – he; 很 – very; 有钱 – rich; 却 – yet; 不 – not; 快乐 – happy.

却: but, yet (before the verb)



15.3.3 With 但是 / 可是

- It can follow 但是: **我想帮他，但是他却不需要。** – "I wanted to help him, but he didn't need it."
- It often appears in writing and stories.

我想帮他，但是他却不需要。
wǒ xiǎng bāng tā dàn shì tā què bù xū yào
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – wanted to; 帮 – help; 他 – him; 但是 – but; 他 – he; 却 – yet; 不 – not; 需要 – need it.

15.3.4 却 never comes first

- 却 is an adverb: it goes after the subject, never at the start: 他却不来, not 却他不来.
- 但是 starts the clause; 却 follows the subject. They can be used together.

15.3.5 却 versus 但是

- 但是 is the general "but" and opens the clause.
- 却 stresses the surprising contrast and sits inside the clause: 天很冷，他却只穿了一件 T 恤.

天很冷，他却只穿了一件 T 恤。
tiān hěn lěng tā què zhǐ chuān le yí jiàn T xù
Word guide: 天 – it; 很 – very; 冷 – cold; 他 – he; 却 – yet; 只 – only; 穿 – wore; 一件 – a; T 恤 – T-shirt.

15.3.6 Recap

- **Subject + 却 + predicate** = yet, however (a surprising contrast).
- After the subject, never first; can combine with 但是 / 可是.

Practise this pattern step by step.

15.4 ■ Practice without the models

15.4.1 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

1501.1 Complete: “Although it was late, he was still working.” …… 很晚了，他还在工作。

1501.2 In 有问题尽管问我, what does 尽管 mean?

- A. because
- B. although
- C. even if
- D. feel free to

1501.3 Build: “Although he works hard, his grades still aren’t good.”

Arrange all chunks: 成绩还是 / 不太好。/ 尽管他很努力 / ，可是

1501.4 尽管 introduces something that is actually true.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1501.5 The school sports day went ahead even though it was snowing. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

15.4.2 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

1502.1 Complete: “Everyone was nervous; he, surprisingly, was calm.” 大家都很紧张，他 …… 很平静。

1502.2 What does 你说得倒容易 suggest?

- A. You said it again.
- B. You spoke slowly.
- C. It’s easy for you to say (but hard to do).
- D. The speaker agrees it is easy.

1502.3 Build: “The goods are fine, it’s just that they’re too expensive.”

Arrange all chunks: ，/ 就是 / 太贵了。/ 东西倒是不错

1502.4 反而 is stronger than 却.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1502.5 Your friend expected the small restaurant to be cheap, but it was pricey and the fancy one was cheap. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

15.4.3 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

1503.1 Complete: “It’s spring, yet it’s still very cold.” 已经是春天了，天气 …… 还很冷。

1503.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他很聪明，他却不努力。
- B. 却他很聪明，不努力。
- C. 他很聪明，不努力却。
- D. 他很聪明，却他不努力。

1503.3 Build: “I wanted to help him, but he didn’t need it.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 但是 / 他却 / 我想帮他 / 不需要。

1503.4 却 can open a clause on its own, like 但是.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1503.5 After a long day you lie in bed, exhausted, but your mind won’t stop. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

15.5 ■ Answers and explanations

15.5.1 尽管 … ，但是 … (although)

1501.1 尽管

尽管 + fact, then the result despite it.

1501.2 D. feel free to

Before a verb, 尽管 = feel free to.

1501.3 尽管他很努力，可是成绩还是不太好。

尽管 A，可是 … 还是 B.

1501.4 True.

For a hypothetical "even if", use 即使.

1501.5 One possible response: 尽管下着雪，运动会还是照常举行了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 尽管 at the start of a clause = "although". Before a verb, 尽管 = "feel free to": 有问题尽管问.
- Do not combine 尽管 with 即使 or 虽然 in the same clause; one is enough.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

15.5.2 倒 (actually / on the contrary)

1502.1 倒

倒 marks a result against expectation.

1502.2 C. It's easy for you to say (but hard to do).

Ironic 倒: easy to say, not to do.

1502.3 东西倒是不错，就是太贵了。

倒是 …，就是 ….

1502.4 True.

反而 says the opposite of what you'd expect actually happened.

1502.5 One possible response: 这家小饭馆倒挺贵的。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 倒 needs an expectation to go against (stated or obvious); without one it sounds odd.

- It goes after the subject: 他倒不着急, not 倒他不着急.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

15.5.3 却 + Predicate (however / yet)

1503.1 却

却 after the subject marks the contrast.

1503.2 A. 他很聪明，他却不努力。

他很聪明，他却不努力 is right: 却 is an adverb, so it goes after the subject of its clause. Unlike 但是, it can never start the clause.

1503.3 我想帮他，但是他却不需要。

但是 + subject + 却 + predicate.

1503.4 False.

却 is an adverb after the subject.

1503.5 One possible response: 我很累，却睡不着。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 却 is an adverb: it goes after the subject, never at the start: 他却不来, not 却他不来.
- 但是 starts the clause; 却 follows the subject. They can be used together.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

16 ”Even If” Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

16.1 ■ 即使 … ，也 … (even if)

16.1.1 Rain or shine

- Your football coach is determined that tomorrow’s training will happen.
- **即使明天下雨，我们也要训练。** – “Even if it rains tomorrow, we’ll still train.”

16.1.2 即使 A，也 B = even if A, still B

- **即使 + possible situation，Subject + 也 + result** = even if A happens, B stays the same.
- A is usually hypothetical; 也 is needed in the second clause.

即使很忙，他也每天运动。
jí shǐ hěn máng tā yě měi tiān yùn dòng
Word guide: 即使 – even if; 很 – very; 忙 – busy; 他 – he; 也 – still; 每天 – every day; 运动 – exercises.



16.1.3 Promises and determination

- **即使大家都反对，我也要试试。** – “Even if everyone is against it, I’m going to give it a try.”
- **即使你不说，我也知道。** – “Even if you don’t say it, I know.”

即使你不说，我也知道。
jí shǐ nǐ bù shuō wǒ yě zhī dào
Word guide: 即使 – even if; 你 – you; 不 – don’t; 说 – say; 我 – I; 也 – still; 知道 – know.

16.1.4 也 after the subject

- Put 也 after the subject of the second clause: 我也要去, not 也我要去.
- 即使 pairs with 也, not 但是: 即使下雨，也去, not 即使下雨，但是去.

16.1.5 即使 versus 虽然 / 尽管

- 虽然 / 尽管 state a fact: 虽然下雨了，我们还是去了 (it did rain).
- 即使 states a possibility: 即使下雨，我们也去 (it might rain).

虽然下雨了，我们还是去了。
suī rán xià yǔ le wǒ men hái shi qù le
Word guide: 虽然 – although; 下雨 – it rained; 我们 – we; 还是 – still; 去 – went.

16.1.6 Recap

- **即使 A，(Subject) 也 B** = even if A, still B (A hypothetical).
- 也 after the subject; facts take 虽然 / 尽管.

Practise this pattern step by step.

16.2 ■ Practice without the models

16.2.1 即使 … ，也 … (even if)

1601.1 Complete: "Even if it's expensive, I'll buy it." 即使很贵，我 …… 要买。

1601.2 It rained yesterday, and you went out anyway. Which fits? _____ 昨天下雨了，我们还是出去了。

- A. 如果
- B. 虽然
- C. 即使
- D. 只要

1601.3 Build: "Even if everyone is against it, I'm going to try."

Arrange all chunks: 即使大家都反对 / 我也 / ， / 要试试。

1601.4 即使下雨，但是我们去 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1601.5 Your football coach is determined that tomorrow's training will happen. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

16.3 ■ Answers and explanations

16.3.1 即使 … ，也 … (even if)

1601.1 也

即使 pairs with 也.

1601.2 B. 虽然

A fact takes 虽然; 即使 is for possibilities.

1601.3 即使大家都反对，我也要试试。

即使 A，subject + 也 + B.

1601.4 False.

即使 pairs with 也: 即使下雨，我们也去.

1601.5 One possible response: 即使明天下雨，我们也要训练。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 也 after the subject of the second clause: 我也要去, not 也我要去.
- 即使 pairs with 也, not 但是: 即使下雨，也去, not 即使下雨，但是去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

17 ”If” Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

17.1 ■ 要是 … ，就 … (if – spoken)

17.1.1 If I’d known

- Your friend didn’t tell you about the party, and you would have loved to go.
- **要是你早告诉我，我就去了。** – “If you’d told me earlier, I would have gone.”

17.1.2 要是 A，(Subject) 就 B

- **要是** = “if”, the spoken partner of 如果. The result clause takes 就 after its subject.
- 的话 can close the condition: 要是你有空的话，就来吧.

要是你有空，就来吧。
yào shi nǐ yǒu kòng jiù lái ba
Word guide: 要是 – if; 你 – you; 有空 – are free; 就 – then; 来 – come.



17.1.3 Real and unreal conditions

- Possible: **要是明天不下雨，我们就去爬山。** – “If it doesn’t rain tomorrow, we’ll go hiking.”
- Past, unreal: **要是我早点儿出门，就不会迟到了。** – “If I’d left earlier, I wouldn’t have been late.”

要是我早点儿出门，就不会迟到了。
yào shi wǒ zǎo diǎnr chū mén jiù bú huì chí dào le
Word guide: 要是 – if; 我 – I; 早 – earlier; 点儿 – a bit; 出门 – left; 就 – then; 不会 – wouldn’t; 迟到 – be late.

17.1.4 就 after the subject

- Subject first, then 就: 我就去, not 就我去.
- 要是 is spoken; in an essay, 如果 or 假如 sounds better.

17.1.5 要是 versus 如果 and 只要

- 如果 is neutral and written: 如果有问题，请联系我.
- 只要 … 就 = as long as (the condition is enough): 只要有空，我就来.

如果有问题，请联系我。
rú guǒ yǒu wèn tí qǐng lián xì wǒ
Word guide: 如果 – if; 有 – there are; 问题 – questions; 请 – please; 联系 – contact; 我 – me.

17.1.6 Recap

- **要是 A (的话)，Subject + 就 B** = if A, then B (spoken).
- Also for unreal past conditions (就不会 … 了); 如果 is the neutral/written form.

Practise this pattern step by step.

17.2 ■ Practice without the models

17.2.1 要是 ... ，就 ... (if – spoken)

1701.1 Complete (spoken): "If you're tired, have a rest." …… 你累了，就休息一下。

1701.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 要是下雨，就我们不去。
- B. 我们就要是下雨不去。
- C. 要是下雨，我们就不去。
- D. 要是下雨，我们不就去。

1701.3 Build: "If I'd left earlier, I wouldn't have been late."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 迟到了。/ 就不会 / 要是我早点儿出门

1701.4 如果 suits formal writing better than 要是.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1701.5 Your friend didn't tell you about the party, and you would have loved to go. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

17.3 ■ Answers and explanations

17.3.1 要是 … ，就 … (if – spoken)

1701.1 要是

要是 + condition, 就 + result.

1701.2 C. 要是下雨，我们就不去。

要是下雨，我们就不去 is right: in the result clause, 就 comes after the subject 我们 and before the verb phrase.

1701.3 要是我早点儿出门，就不会迟到了。

要是 + condition, 就不会 … 了.

1701.4 True.

要是 is spoken; 如果 is neutral and written.

1701.5 One possible response: 要是你早告诉我，我就去了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Subject first, then 就: 我就去, not 就我去.
- 要是 is spoken; in an essay, 如果 or 假如 sounds better.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18 ”No Matter” Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

18.1 ■ 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

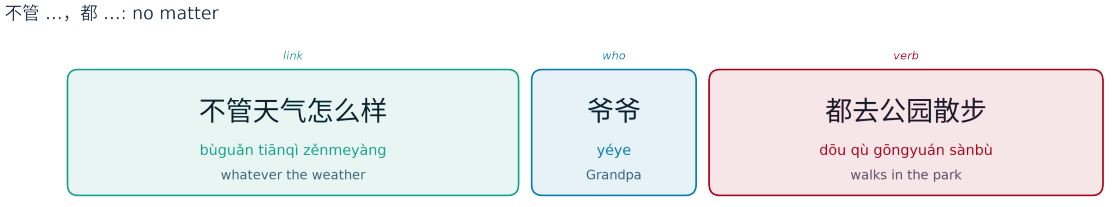
18.1.1 Whatever the weather

- Your grandfather walks in the park every morning, rain or shine.
- **不管天气怎么样，爷爷都去公园散步。** – “No matter what the weather is like, Grandpa goes for a walk in the park.”

18.1.2 不管 + open question，都 / 也 + result

- **不管 + question word / A-not-A / 还是**, then **都** or **也**: the result stays the same in every case.
- 不管 must be followed by an open choice: 不管谁, 不管多忙, 不管去不去.

不管多忙，他都给妈妈打电话。
bù guǎn duō máng tā dōu gěi mā ma dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 不管 – no matter; 多 – how; 忙 – busy; 他 – he; 都 – always; 给 – to; 妈妈 – Mum; 打电话 – calls.



18.1.3 Three ways to open the choice

- Question word: **不管谁来，我都欢迎。** – “Whoever comes, they’re welcome.”
- A-not-A / 还是: **不管你去不去，我都去。** / 不管坐车还是走路，都要一个小时.

不管你去不去，我都去。
bù guǎn nǐ qù bu qù wǒ dōu qù
Word guide: 不管 – no matter; 你 – you; 去 – go; 不 – or not; 去 – go; 我 – I; 都 – anyway; 去 – go.

18.1.4 No plain statement after 不管

- 不管下雨 is wrong; it needs an open choice: 不管下不下雨 or 不管天气怎么样.
- Put 都 / 也 after the subject of the result: 我都去, not 都我去.

18.1.5 不管 versus 虽然

- 虽然 + one fact: 虽然下雨，我还是去了 (it did rain).
- 不管 + every possibility: 不管下不下雨，我都去 (rain or no rain).

虽然下雨，我还是去了。
suī rán xià yǔ wǒ hái shi qù le
Word guide: 虽然 – although; 下雨 – it rained; 我 – I; 还是 – still; 去 – went.

18.1.6 Recap

- **不管 + QW / A-not-A / A 还是 B，Subject + 都/也 + result** = no matter …, ….
- Needs an open choice, never a single fact (that is 虽然).

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.2 ■ 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

18.2.1 The same rule for everyone

- The new school rules are read out at assembly.
- **无论是谁，都必须遵守规定。** – "Whoever you are, you must follow the rules."

18.2.2 无论 / 不论 + open choice，都 / 也 + result

- **无论** and **不论** mean "no matter, regardless of", like 不管 but more formal.
- The same structure: an open choice (QW, A-not-A, 还是), then 都 / 也.

无论遇到什么困难，他都不放弃。
wú lùn yù dào shén me kùn nan tā dōu bú fàng qì
Word guide: 无论 – no matter; 遇到 – meet; 什么 – what; 困难 – difficulty; 他 – he; 都 – always; 不 – not; 放弃 – give up.



18.2.3 Formal promises and rules

- **无论多晚，我们都会等你。** – "However late it is, we'll wait for you."
- **不论大小，每件事都要认真做。** – "Big or small, every task must be done carefully."

不论大小，每件事都要认真做。

bú lùn dà xiǎo měi jiàn shì dōu yào rèn zhēn zuò
Word guide: 不论 – regardless of; 大小 – size; 每 – every; 件 – (measure word); 事 – task; 都 – all; 要 – must; 认真 – carefully; 做 – be done.

18.2.4 Same rules as 不管

- An open choice must follow: 无论天气怎么样, not 无论下雨.
- 都 / 也 goes after the subject of the result: 他都不放弃.

18.2.5 无论 / 不论 versus 不管

- 不管 is spoken and casual: 不管你说什么，我都不听.
- 无论 / 不论 suit speeches, rules and writing; 无论如何 = "in any case, whatever happens".

无论如何，我都会来。
wú lùn rú hé wǒ dōu huì lái
Word guide: 无论如何 – whatever happens; 我 – I; 都 – (definitely); 会 – will; 来 – come.

18.2.6 Recap

- **无论 / 不论 + open choice，都/也 + result** = no matter …, regardless of … (formal).
- 不管 is the spoken version; 无论如何 = in any case.

Practise this pattern step by step.

18.3 ■ Practice without the models

18.3.1 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

1801.1 Complete: "No matter how busy he is, he calls his mum." 不管多忙，他 …… 给妈妈打电话。

1801.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 不管下不下雨，我都去。
- B. 不管下不下雨，都我去。
- C. 不管下雨，我都去。
- D. 不管下雨，我还是去。

1801.3 Build: "Whoever comes, they're welcome."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 不管谁来 / 欢迎。/ 我都

1801.4 不管 introduces one fact that really happened.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1801.5 Your grandfather walks in the park every morning, rain or shine. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.3.2 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

1802.1 Complete (formal): “Whatever difficulties he meets, he never gives up.” ……遇到什么困难，他都不放弃。

1802.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 无论多忙，都他来。
- B. 无论多忙，他但是来。
- C. 无论很忙，他都来。
- D. 无论多忙，他都来。

1802.3 Build: “Whatever happens, I’ll come.”

Arrange all chunks: 无论如何 / 我都 / ， / 会来。

1802.4 不管 is more formal than 无论.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1802.5 The new school rules are read out at assembly. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

18.4 ■ Answers and explanations

18.4.1 不管 … ，都 / 也 … (no matter)

1801.1 都

不管 …，都/也 ….

1801.2 A. 不管下不下雨，我都去。

不管 needs an open choice, and 都 follows the subject.

1801.3 不管谁来，我都欢迎。

不管 + QW, subject + 都 + result.

1801.4 False.

It covers every possibility; a single fact takes 虽然.

1801.5 One possible response: 不管天气怎么样，爷爷都去公园散步。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不管下雨 is wrong; it needs an open choice: 不管下不下雨 or 不管天气怎么样.
- Put 都 / 也 after the subject of the result: 我都去, not 都我去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

18.4.2 无论 / 不论 … ，都 / 也 … (regardless)

1802.1 无论

无论 + open choice, 都 + result.

1802.2 D. 无论多忙，他都来。

无论多忙，他都来 is right: 无论 needs an open choice such as 多忙 or 什么, not a fixed 很忙, and the result clause uses subject + 都.

1802.3 无论如何，我都会来。

无论如何 + 都 + result.

1802.4 False.

无论 / 不论 are the formal ones.

1802.5 One possible response: 无论是谁，都必须遵守规定。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- An open choice must follow: 无论天气怎么样, not 无论下雨.
- 都 / 也 goes after the subject of the result: 他都不放弃.

- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19 Cause/Effect Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

19.1 ■ 由于 (due to / owing to)

19.1.1 Flight delayed

- An airport announcement explains why your flight is late.
- **由于天气原因，航班推迟起飞。** – "Due to the weather, the flight's departure has been delayed."

19.1.2 由于 + cause，result

- **由于** = "due to, owing to": a formal "because", common in notices, news and writing.
- It can take a noun phrase or a clause: 由于时间关系, 由于他生病了.

由于他生病了，会议取消了。
yóu yú tā shēng bìng le huì yì qǔ xiāo le
Word guide: 由于 – due to; 他 – he; 生病 – ill; 会议 – the meeting; 取消 – cancelled.



19.1.3 With 所以 or 因此

- **由于工作忙，所以他很少回家。** – "Because work is busy, he rarely goes home."
- **由于准备充分，因此比赛很顺利。** – "Because we prepared well, the competition went smoothly."

由于工作忙，所以他很少回家。
yóu yú gōng zuò máng suǒ yǐ tā hěn shǎo huí jiā
Word guide: 由于 – owing to; 工作 – work; 忙 – busy; 所以 – so; 他 – he; 很少 – rarely; 回家 – goes home.

19.1.4 Formal, and cause first

- 由于 introduces the cause before the result; "the result, 由于 cause" is less natural than with 因为.

- In everyday conversation, 因为 sounds more natural than 由于.

19.1.5 由于 versus 因为

- 因为 can follow the result: 我没去，因为下雨了.
- 由于 normally starts the sentence and can pair with 因此: 由于 …，因此 ….

我没去，因为下雨了。
wǒ méi qù yīn wèi xià yǔ le
Word guide: 我 – I; 没 – didn't; 去 – go; 因为 – because; 下雨 – it rained.

19.1.6 Recap

- **由于 + cause，(所以 / 因此) result** = due to / owing to (formal).
- Cause first; 因为 is the everyday word and can follow the result.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.2 ■ 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

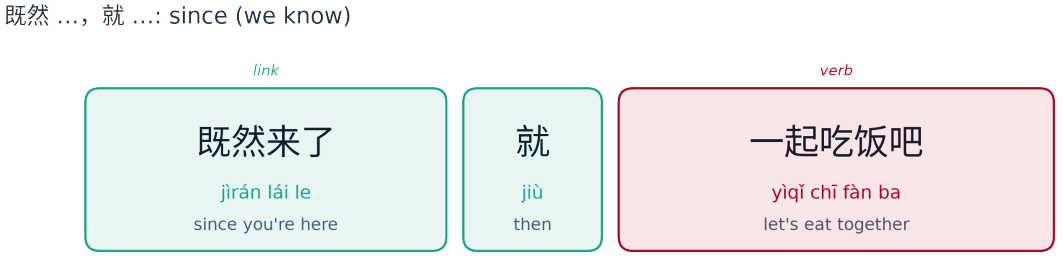
19.2.1 Since you're here

- Your friend drops by just as you are cooking dinner.
- **既然来了，就一起吃饭吧！** – "Since you're here, stay and eat with us!"

19.2.2 既然 A，就 B = since A (is a fact), B

- **既然** introduces a known fact; the second clause draws a conclusion or suggestion with 就.
- 就 goes after the subject: 既然你不舒服，你就回家休息吧.

既然你不舒服，就回家休息吧。
jì rán nǐ bù shū fu jiù huí jiā xiū xi ba
Word guide: 既然 – since; 你 – you; 不 – not; 舒服 – well; 就 – then; 回家 – go home; 休息 – rest.



19.2.3 Advice and decisions

- **既然你已经决定了，我就不多说了。** – "Since you've already decided, I won't say any more."
- The second part is often a suggestion (吧), a decision or a question (为什么还 …?).

既然你已经决定了，我就不多说了。
jì rán nǐ yǐ jīng jué dìng le wǒ jiù bù duō shuō le
Word guide: 既然 – since; 你 – you; 已经 – already; 决定 – decided; 我 – I; 就 – then; 不 – not; 多 – more; 说 – say.

19.2.4 A fact both people know

- 既然 needs a fact that is already true and known; for a possibility use 如果: 如果你来，… .
- Pair it with 就 (or 那 / 还), not 所以: 既然下雨了，我们就别去了.

19.2.5 既然 versus 因为

- 因为 explains why something happened: 因为下雨，比赛取消了.
- 既然 uses a fact to suggest what to do now: 既然下雨了，我们就在家看电影吧.

既然下雨了，我们就在家看电影吧。
jì rán xià yǔ le wǒ men jiù zài jiā kàn diàn yǐng ba
Word guide: 既然 – since; 下雨 – it's raining; 我们 – we; 就 – then; 在 – at; 家 – home; 看 – watch; 电影 – a film.

19.2.6 Recap

- **既然 A, (Subject) 就 B** = since A (a known fact), then B (suggestion or decision).
- Not for possibilities (如果); pairs with 就, not 所以.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.3 ■ 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

19.3.1 Writing up results

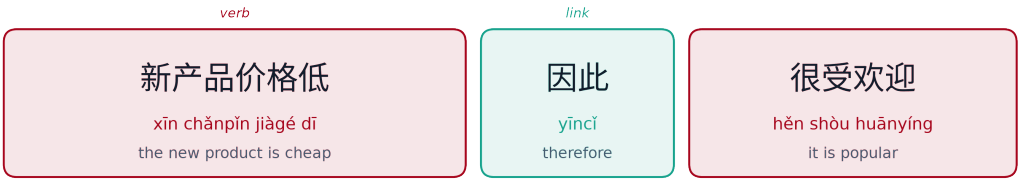
- You are writing a report on why sales of a new drink went up.
- **新产品价格低，因此很受欢迎。** – "The new product is cheap, and is therefore very popular."

19.3.2 Cause，因此 + result

- **因此** = "therefore, for this reason": a formal "so", common in writing.
- It starts the result clause or follows its subject: 因此他决定 … / 他因此决定 ….

他每天练习，因此进步很快。
tā měi tiān liàn xí yīn cǐ jìn bù hěn kuài
Word guide: 他 – he; 每天 – every day; 练习 – practises; 因此 – therefore; 进步 – improves; 很 – very; 快 – fast.

因此: therefore (written)



19.3.3 After a full sentence too

- **这次考试很重要。因此，大家要认真复习。** – "This exam is important. Therefore, everyone must revise carefully."
- It can start a new sentence, followed by a comma.

因此，大家要认真复习。
yīn cǐ dà jiā yào rèn zhēn fù xí
Word guide: 因此 – therefore; 大家 – everyone; 要 – must; 认真 – carefully; 复习 – revise.

19.3.4 Do not pair with 因为

- Use 由于 …, 因此 … or 因为 …, 所以 …; 因为 …, 因此 … is avoided in careful writing.
- 因此 is formal; in chat, 所以 is more natural.

19.3.5 因此 versus 所以 and 于是

- 所以 is the everyday "so": 下雨了，所以我没去.
- 于是 tells the next action in a story; 因此 gives a logical consequence.

下雨了，所以我没去。
xià yǔ le suǒ yǐ wǒ méi qù
Word guide: 下雨 – it rained; 所以 – so; 我 – I; 没 – didn't; 去 – go.

19.3.6 Recap

- **Cause，因此 + result** = therefore (formal); it may start a new sentence.
- Pairs with 由于; everyday speech uses 所以.

Practise this pattern step by step.

19.4 ■ Practice without the models

19.4.1 由于 (due to / owing to)

1901.1 Complete (notice): "Due to the bad weather, the event is cancelled." ……
天气不好，活动取消。

1901.2 Which word can naturally follow the result? 我没去，_____ 下雨了。

- A. 由于
- B. 于是
- C. 因此
- D. 因为

1901.3 Build: “Because we prepared well, the competition went smoothly.”

Arrange all chunks: 因此 / 比赛很顺利。/ 由于准备充分 / ，

1901.4 由于 sounds more formal than 因为.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1901.5 An airport announcement explains why your flight is late. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.4.2 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

1902.1 Complete: “Since you’re ill, go home and rest.” …… 你病了，就回家休息吧。

1902.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 既然下雨了，所以我们别去了。
- B. 既然下雨了，我们就别去了。
- C. 我们就别去了，既然所以下雨。
- D. 既然明天可能下雨，就我们别去。

1902.3 Build: “Since you’ve decided, I won’t say any more.”

Arrange all chunks: 我就 / ， / 既然你已经决定了 / 不多说了。

1902.4 既然 is the right word for a situation that may or may not happen.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1902.5 Your friend drops by just as you are cooking dinner. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.4.3 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

1903.1 Complete (written): “He practises daily and therefore improves fast.” 他每天练习，…… 进步很快。

1903.2 Which pair suits careful writing?

- A. 由于 …，因此 …
- B. 如果 …，因此 …
- C. 既然 …，因此 …

- D. 因为 …，因此 …

1903.3 Build: “Therefore, everyone must revise carefully.”

Arrange all chunks: 大家要 / 因此 / ， / 认真复习。

1903.4 In casual conversation, 所以 sounds more natural than 因此.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

1903.5 You are writing a report on why sales of a new drink went up. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

19.5 ■ Answers and explanations

19.5.1 由于 (due to / owing to)

1901.1 由于

由于 + cause, then the result.

1901.2 D. 因为

因为 can follow the result; 由于 normally starts the sentence.

1901.3 由于准备充分，因此比赛很顺利。

由于 …，因此 ….

1901.4 True.

It suits notices, news and writing.

1901.5 One possible response: 由于天气原因，航班推迟起飞。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 由于 introduces the cause before the result; "the result, 由于 cause" is less natural than with 因为.
- In everyday conversation, 因为 sounds more natural than 由于.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19.5.2 既然 … ，就 … (since / now that)

1902.1 既然

既然 + known fact, 就 + suggestion.

1902.2 B. 既然下雨了，我们就别去了。

既然下雨了，我们就别去了 is right: 既然 pairs with 就 after the subject. 所以 does not pair with 既然, and 就 cannot come before 我们.

1902.3 既然你已经决定了，我就不多说了。

既然 + fact, subject + 就 + decision.

1902.4 False.

Possibilities take 如果; 既然 needs a known fact.

1902.5 One possible response: 既然来了，就一起吃饭吧！

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 既然 needs a fact that is already true and known; for a possibility use 如果: 如果你来，… .
- Pair it with 就 (or 那 / 还), not 所以: 既然下雨了，我们就别去了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

19.5.3 因此 (therefore / for this reason)

1903.1 因此

因此 gives the logical consequence.

1903.2 A. 由于 …，因此 …

由于 … 因此 … is the standard written pair.

1903.3 因此，大家要认真复习。

因此 can open a new sentence.

1903.4 True.

True. 因此 is formal and written; in casual conversation 所以 is the natural word for "so, therefore".

1903.5 One possible response: 新产品价格低，因此很受欢迎。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use 由于 …，因此 … or 因为 …，所以 …; 因为 …，因此 … is avoided in careful writing.
- 因此 is formal; in chat, 所以 is more natural.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20 Complements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

20.1 ■ Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

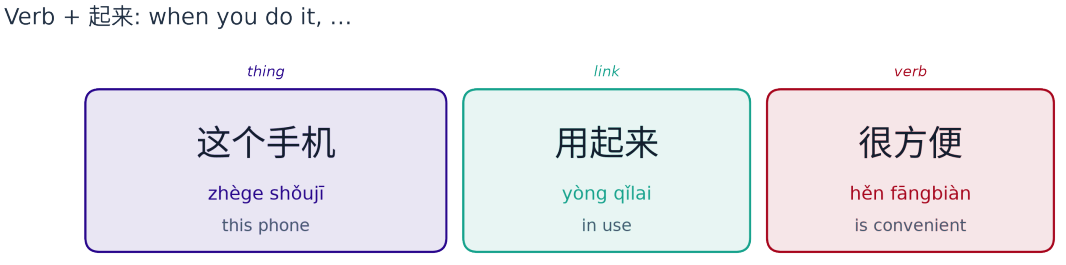
20.1.1 Easy to use?

- A friend asks what you think of your new phone after a week.
- **这个手机用起来很方便。** – "This phone is very convenient to use."

20.1.2 Verb + 起来 + comment = when you do it

- **Verb + 起来** = "when it comes to doing it, in the doing": the comment judges the experience.
- 说起来容易，做起来难 – "Easier said than done."

说起来容易，做起来难。
shuō qǐ lai róng yì zuò qǐ lai nán
Word guide: 说 – say; 起来 – (in doing); 容易 – easy; 做 – do; 起来 – (in doing); 难 – hard.



20.1.3 Senses and experience

- **这个菜吃起来有点儿辣。** – "This dish tastes a bit spicy."
- **这首歌听起来很熟悉。** – "This song sounds familiar."

这首歌听起来很熟悉。
zhè shǒu gē tīng qǐ lai hěn shú xī
Word guide: 这 – this; 首 – (measure word); 歌 – song; 听 – listen; 起来 – (when); 很 – very; 熟悉 – familiar.

20.1.4 The thing judged comes first

- Put what you are judging first: 这本书读起来很有意思, not 读起来这本书很有意思 in most speech.
- 起来 here does not mean "get up" or "start"; it marks the experience of doing.

20.1.5 Three uses of 起来

- Judging: 用起来很方便. Starting: 他笑了起来 – "He started laughing."
- Upward movement: 站起来 – "stand up". Context and the following comment tell you which.

他笑了起来。
tā xiào le qi lai
Word guide: 他 – he; 笑 – laugh; 起来 – (start).

20.1.6 Recap

- **Thing + Verb + 起来 + comment** = it is … to do: 用起来方便, 说起来容易.
- Other 起来: start (笑起来), upward (站起来).

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.2 ■ Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

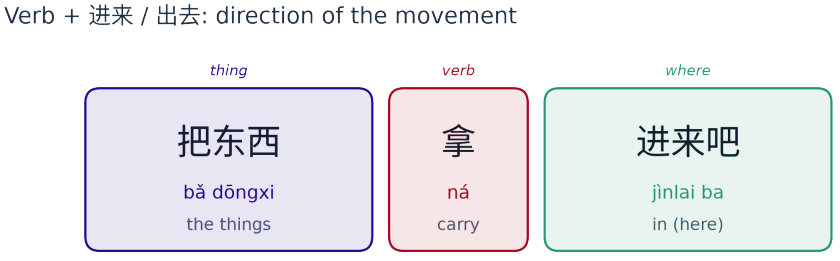
20.2.1 Bring it in, take it out

- You ask your brother to carry the shopping bags from the car into the kitchen.
- **把东西拿进来吧。** – "Bring the things in."

20.2.2 Verb + direction + 来 / 去

- **Verb + 上/下/进/出/回/过/起 + 来/去** shows how an action moves: 拿进来, 走出去, 跑回来, 站起来.
- 来 = towards the speaker; 去 = away from the speaker.

他从教室里走出来了。
tā cóng jiào shì li zǒu chū lai le
Word guide: 他 – he; 从 – out of; 教室 – the classroom; 里 – (inside); 走 – walk; 出来 – come out.



20.2.3 Where the place and object go

- **A place** goes before 来/去: **他走进教室来了。** – "He walked into the classroom."
- **A thing** can go before 来/去 or after the whole complement: 拿出一本书来 / 拿出来一本书.

他拿出一本书来。
tā ná chū yì běn shū lái
Word guide: 他 – he; 拿 – took; 出 – out; 一 – a; 本 – (measure word); 书 – book; 来 – (towards me).

20.2.4 Place before 来 / 去

- 走进教室来, not 走进来教室: a place never follows 来 / 去.
- Pick 来 or 去 by where the speaker is: inside the room → 进来; outside → 进去.

20.2.5 Abstract meanings

- 想起来 = remember: 我想起来了! – "I've remembered!"
- 看出来 = make out, notice: 我看出来他不高兴 – "I could tell he wasn't happy."

我想起来了!
wǒ xiǎng qǐ lai le
Word guide: 我 – I; 想 – think; 起来 – (recall).

20.2.6 Recap

- **Verb + direction + 来/去** = movement towards / away from the speaker: 拿进来, 走出去.
- A place goes before 来/去; abstract uses: 想起来, 看出来.

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.3 ■ Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to ...)

20.3.1 The music starts

- At a party, the band plays a favourite song and the room comes alive.
- **音乐一响，大家都跳起来了。** – "As soon as the music played, everyone started dancing."

20.3.2 Verb / Adj + 起来 = start to, begin to

- **Verb + 起来** = an action starts and continues: 笑起来, 哭起来, 下起雨来.
- **Adj + 起来** = a state begins to develop: 天气热起来了, 他胖起来了.

天气慢慢热起来了。
tiān qì màn màn rè qi lai le
Word guide: 天气 – the weather; 慢慢 – slowly; 热 – hot; 起来 – (start to).

一 …，(就) …: as soon as



20.3.3 With an object: split 起 … 来

- The object goes **between** 起 and 来: **下起雨来了。** – "It started to rain." 唱起歌来 – "start singing".
- Without an object: 下起来了.

外面下起雨来了。
wài miàn xià qǐ yǔ lái le
Word guide: 外面 – outside; 下 – fall; 起 – (start); 雨 – rain; 来 – (start).

20.3.4 Object in the middle

- 下起雨来, not 下起来雨: the object sits between 起 and 来.
- Adj + 起来 usually describes a change towards more: 热起来, 好起来; "getting cold" is often 冷下来 / 凉下来.

20.3.5 起来 versus 下去

- 起来 = start something new: 他们聊起来了.
- 下去 = continue something already going: 请说下去.

请说下去。
qǐng shuō xià qu
Word guide: 请 – please; 说 – speak; 下去 – (continue).

20.3.6 Recap

- **Verb / Adj + 起来** = start to, begin to (笑起来, 热起来).
- Object goes between: 下起雨来; 下去 = continue.

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.4 ■ Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

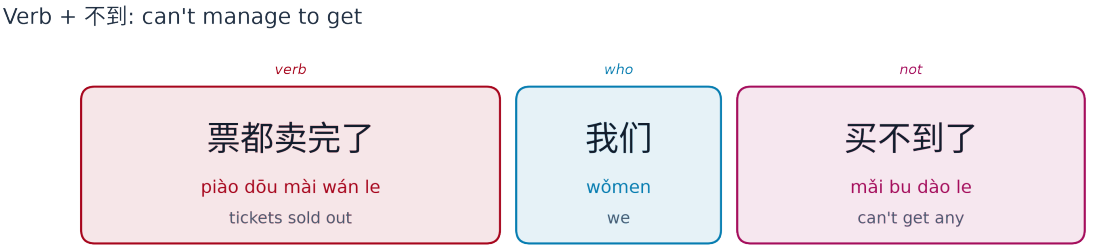
20.4.1 Sold out

- You try to book concert tickets online, but they are gone in minutes.
- **票都卖完了，我们买不到了。** – "The tickets are sold out; we can't get any."

20.4.2 Verb + 得 / 不 + result / direction

- **Verb + 得 + complement** = can; **Verb + 不 + complement** = can't: 买得到 / 买不到, 拿得动 / 拿不动.
- It says whether the result is possible in the situation.

这个箱子太重，我拿不动。
zhè ge xiāng zi tài zhòng wǒ ná bu dòng
Word guide: 这个 – this; 箱子 – box; 太 – too; 重 – heavy; 我 – I; 拿 – lift; 不 – (cannot); 动 – move.



20.4.3 Common HSK 4 pairs

- **来得及 / 来不及** = there is / isn't enough time: 现在出发还来得及.
- **受不了** = can't stand; **听不清楚** = can't hear clearly; **记不住** = can't remember.

现在出发还来得及。
xiàn zài chū fā hái lái de jí
Word guide: 现在 – now; 出发 – set off; 还 – still; 来得及 – in time.

20.4.4 Not the same as 不能

- 不能 is about permission or general ability: 这里不能停车. Potential complements are about whether the result can be achieved: 我听不懂.
- Put the object after the complement or before as a topic: 我听不懂他的话 / 他的话我听不懂.

20.4.5 不了 = can't (at all)

- **Verb + 不了 (liǎo)** = unable to do it: 我去不了 – "I can't make it." 吃不了 – "can't finish eating."
- Positive: 去得了 – "able to go".

明天我去不了。
míng tiān wǒ qù bu liǎo
Word guide: 明天 – tomorrow; 我 – I; 去 – go; 不了 – can't.

20.4.6 Recap

- **Verb + 得/不 + complement** = can / can't achieve it (买不到, 拿不动, 来得及).
- Verb + 不了 = unable to; 不能 = not allowed / generally can't.

Practise this pattern step by step.

20.5 ■ Practice without the models

20.5.1 Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

2001.1 Complete: "This method sounds simple but is hard to do." 这个方法听 …… 简单，做起来难。

2001.2 Match each sentence to the use of 起来.

- 1. 这个包背起来很舒服。
- 1. 大家都笑起来了。
- 1. 请站起来。
- A. judging the experience
- B. upward movement
- C. starting an action

2001.3 Build: "This song sounds familiar."

Arrange all chunks: 这首歌 / 很熟悉。/ 听起来

2001.4 说起来容易，做起来难 means "easier said than done".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2001.5 A friend asks what you think of your new phone after a week. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.2 Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

2002.1 You are inside. Ask a friend: "Bring the chairs in." 把椅子搬进 …… 吧。

2002.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他走进来教室了。
- B. 他进来走教室了。
- C. 他走教室进来了。
- D. 他走进教室来了。

2002.3 Build: "He took a book out."

Arrange all chunks: 来。/ 一本书 / 拿出 / 他

2002.4 我看出来他不高兴 means "I could tell he was unhappy."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2002.5 You ask your brother to carry the shopping bags from the car into the kitchen. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.3 Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to …)

2003.1 Complete: "The baby suddenly started crying." 宝宝突然哭 …… 了。

2003.2 Which says "It started to snow"?

- A. 雪下起了来。
- B. 下起雪来了。
- C. 下起来雪了。
- D. 起来下雪了。

2003.3 Build: "They started singing."

Arrange all chunks: 唱起 / 来了。 / 他们 / 歌

2003.4 请说下去 asks someone to start speaking.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2003.5 At a party, the band plays a favourite song and the room comes alive. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.5.4 Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

2004.1 Complete: "The box is too heavy; I can't lift it." 箱子太重了，我拿 …… 动。

2004.2 A sign forbids parking. Which fits? 这里 _____ 停车。

- A. 不能
- B. 不了
- C. 停不到
- D. 停不了

2004.3 Match each form to its meaning.

- 1. 来不及
- 1. 受不了
- 1. 记不住
- 1. 买不到
- A. not enough time
- B. can't remember

- C. can't stand it
- D. can't get hold of

2004.4 Build: "I've got something on tomorrow; I can't make it."

Arrange all chunks: 不了。 / 我明天 / ， 去 / 有事

2004.5 You try to book concert tickets online, but they are gone in minutes. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

20.6 ■ Answers and explanations

20.6.1 Verb + 起来 (in terms of doing it)

2001.1 起来

Verb + 起来 + comment.

2001.2 1–A: 这个包背起来很舒服。= judging the experience; 2–C: 大家都笑起来了。= starting an action; 3–B: 请站起来。= upward movement

The comment and the verb tell you which use it is.

2001.3 这首歌听起来很熟悉。

Thing + Verb + 起来 + comment.

2001.4 True.

It judges saying versus doing.

2001.5 One possible response: 这个手机用起来很方便。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put what you are judging first: 这本书读起来很有意思, not 读起来这本书很有意思 in most speech.
- 起来 here does not mean "get up" or "start"; it marks the experience of doing.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.2 Direction complement 来 / 去 (HSK 4)

2002.1 来

Towards the speaker: 进来.

2002.2 D. 他走进教室来了。

他走进教室来了 is right: with a place word, the place goes between 进 and 来 (走进 + 教室 + 来).

2002.3 他拿出一本书来。

Verb + 出 + object + 来.

2002.4 True.

True. 看出来 means "can tell, make out" from what you see: 我看出来他不高兴 "I could tell he was unhappy."

2002.5 One possible response: 把东西拿进来吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.

- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 走进教室来, not 走进来教室: a place never follows 来 / 去.
- Pick 来 or 去 by where the speaker is: inside the room → 进来; outside → 进去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.3 Verb / Adj + 起来 (start to ...)

2003.1 起来

Verb + 起来 = start to.

2003.2 B. 下起雪来了。

The object goes between 起 and 来.

2003.3 他们唱起歌来了。

Verb + 起 + object + 来.

2003.4 False.

下去 = continue; starting is 起来.

2003.5 One possible response: 音乐一响，大家都跳起来了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 下起雨来, not 下起来雨: the object sits between 起 and 来.
- Adj + 起来 usually describes a change towards more: 热起来, 好起来; "getting cold" is often 冷下来 / 凉下来.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

20.6.4 Potential complement 得 / 不 (HSK 4)

2004.1 不

Verb + 不 + 动 = can't move it.

2004.2 A. 不能

Prohibition is 不能 (a formal sign may also write 不得); potential complements are about whether a result is achievable, and 不了 cannot stand before a verb.

2004.3 1–A: 来不及 = not enough time; 2–C: 受不了 = can't stand it; 3–B: 记不住 = can't remember; 4–D: 买不到 = can't get hold of

Verb + 不 + complement = the result can't be achieved.

2004.4 我明天有事，去不了。

Verb + 不了 = unable to.

2004.5 One possible response: 票都卖完了，我们买不到了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 不能 is about permission or general ability: 这里不能停车. Potential complements are about whether the result can be achieved: 我听不懂.
- Put the object after the complement or before as a topic: 我听不懂他的话 / 他的话我听不懂.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

21 Conditional Statements

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

21.1 ■ 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

21.1.1 Small daily steps

- A classmate worries about failing the speaking test. You think daily practice is enough.
- **只要每天练习半个小时，你就一定能通过。** – “As long as you practise half an hour every day, you’ll definitely pass.”

21.1.2 只要 A，(Subject) 就 B

- **只要** = “as long as, provided that”: A is enough to bring about B.
- 就 follows the subject of the result clause: 只要你来，我就很高兴.

只要你来，我就很高兴。
zhǐ yào nǐ lái wǒ jiù hěn gāo xìng
Word guide: 只要 – as long as; 你 – you; 来 – come; 我 – I; 就 – then; 很 – very; 高兴 – happy.



21.1.3 Easy conditions, firm results

- **只要有网络，在哪儿都能工作。** – “As long as there’s internet, you can work anywhere.”
- **只要你不说，就没人知道。** – “As long as you don’t tell, nobody will know.”

只要有网络，在哪儿都能工作。
zhǐ yào yǒu wǎng luò zài nǎr dōu néng gōng zuò
Word guide: 只要 – as long as; 有 – there is; 网络 – internet; 在 – at; 哪儿 – anywhere; 都 – (all); 能 – can; 工作 – work.

21.1.4 Enough, not only

- 只要 says the condition is sufficient; "only if" (a necessary condition) is 只有 … 才 ….
- Pair 只要 with 就, not 才: 只要努力就能成功, not 只要努力才能成功.

21.1.5 只要 ... 就 versus 只有 ... 才

- 只要有票，就能进去 – a ticket is all you need.
- **只有有票，才能进去。** – "Only with a ticket can you get in" (no ticket, no entry).

只有有票，才能进去。
zhǐ yǒu yǒu piào cái néng jìn qu
Word guide: 只有 – only if; 有 – have; 票 – a ticket; 才 – only then; 能 – can; 进去 – get in.

21.1.6 Recap

- **只要 A，Subject + 就 B** = as long as A, B (A is enough).
- Pairs with 就; the necessary condition is 只有 … 才 ….

Practise this pattern step by step.

21.2 ■ 除非 ... ，才 ... (only if / unless)

21.2.1 Only with a password

- The office printer only works for staff with a card.
- **除非你有员工卡，才能用这台打印机。** – "Only if you have a staff card can you use this printer."

21.2.2 除非 A，才 B = only if A, B

- **除非 A，才 B** = B happens only if A happens: A is the one necessary condition.
- It is close to 只有 … 才 ….

除非你去，他才会去。
chú fēi nǐ qù tā cái huì qù
Word guide: 除非 – only if; 你 – you; 去 – go; 他 – he; 才 – only then; 会 – will; 去 – go.



21.2.3 除非 A，否则 / 不然 B = unless A, B

- **除非 A，否则 B** = unless A, B will happen: **除非下大雨，否则比赛照常进行。** – "Unless it rains heavily, the match goes ahead."
- 否则 / 不然 introduces what happens when A does not happen.

除非下大雨，否则比赛照常进行。
chú fēi xià dà yǔ fǒu zé bǐ sài zhào cháng jìn xíng
Word guide: 除非 – unless; 下 – fall; 大雨 – heavy rain; 否则 – otherwise; 比赛 – the match; 照常 – as usual; 进行 – goes ahead.

21.2.4 Two different second halves

- With 才: 除非 A，才 B – B only if A. With 否则: 除非 A，否则 B – B unless A. Do not mix the logic.
- 除非下大雨，我们都去 (without 否则) is ambiguous; use 否则 or 不然 to make "unless" clear.

21.2.5 除非 versus 除了

- 除了 = except / besides: 除了他，大家都来了.
- 除非 = only if / unless, about conditions: 除非他来，我才去.

除了他，大家都来了。
chú le tā dà jiā dōu lái le
Word guide: 除了 – except; 他 – him; 大家 – everyone; 都 – all; 来 – came.

21.2.6 Recap

- **除非 A，才 B** = only if A, B; **除非 A，否则 / 不然 B** = unless A, B.
- 除了 is "except"; 除非 is about conditions.

Practise this pattern step by step.

21.3 ■ Practice without the models

21.3.1 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

2101.1 Complete: "As long as you work hard, you can learn it well." 只要努力，你 …… 能学好。

2101.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 只要有时间，我才去。
- B. 只要有时间，就我去。
- C. 只要有时间，我就去。
- D. 只有有时间，我就去。

2101.3 Build: “As long as you don’t tell, nobody will know.”

Arrange all chunks: ， / 只要你不说 / 没人知道。/ 就

2101.4 只有 … 才 … makes the condition necessary; it does not automatically make that condition sufficient.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2101.5 A classmate worries about failing the speaking test. You think daily practice is enough. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

21.3.2 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless)

2102.1 Complete: “Unless you hurry, you’ll miss the train.” 除非你快一点儿，…… 就赶不上火车了。

2102.2 What does 除非你去，我才去 mean?

- A. I won’t go if you go.
- B. I’ll go only if you go.
- C. I’ll go whether or not you go.
- D. Except for you, I’ll go.

2102.3 Build: “Unless it rains heavily, the match goes ahead.”

Arrange all chunks: 照常进行。/ ，否则 / 除非下大雨 / 比赛

2102.4 除非 and 除了 mean the same.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2102.5 The office printer only works for staff with a card. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

21.4 ■ Answers and explanations

21.4.1 只要 … ，就 … (as long as)

2101.1 就

只要 pairs with 就.

2101.2 C. 只要有时间，我就去。

只要有时间，我就去 is right: 只要 ("as long as") pairs with 就 after the subject. 才 belongs with 只有, a stricter condition.

2101.3 只要你不说，就没人知道。

只要 + condition, 就 + result.

2101.4 True.

A necessary condition can coexist with other requirements. 只要 instead presents a sufficient condition.

2101.5 One possible response: 只要每天练习半个小时，你就一定能通过。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 只要 says the condition is sufficient; "only if" (a necessary condition) is 只有 … 才 ….
- Pair 只要 with 就, not 才: 只要努力就能成功, not 只要努力才能成功.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

21.4.2 除非 … ，才 … (only if / unless)

2102.1 否则

除非 A，否则 B = unless A, B.

2102.2 B. I'll go only if you go.

除非 A，才 B means "only if A, then B": 除非你去，我才去 "I'll go only if you go." It does not mean "except for".

2102.3 除非下大雨，否则比赛照常进行。

除非 A，否则 B.

2102.4 False.

除了 = except; 除非 = only if / unless.

2102.5 One possible response: 除非你有员工卡，才能用这台打印机。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.

- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- With 才: 除非 A，才 B – B only if A. With 否则: 除非 A，否则 B – B unless A. Do not mix the logic.
- 除非下大雨，我们都去 (without 否则) is ambiguous; use 否则 or 不然 to make "unless" clear.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

22 Noun Phrases

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

22.1 ■ 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

22.1.1 Everyone in the room

- Your teacher makes an announcement to the whole school.
- **所有的学生都要参加明天的考试。** – "All students must take tomorrow's exam."

22.1.2 所有 (的) + Noun + 都

- **所有 (的) + noun** = "all (of the)": it covers every member of a group. 都 usually follows before the verb.
- 的 is optional: 所有人, 所有的问题.

所有的问题都解决了。
suǒ yǒu de wèn tí dōu jiě jué le
Word guide: 所有 – all; 问题 – questions; 都 – all; 解决 – solved.



22.1.3 As subject or as object

- Subject: **所有人都同意了。** – "Everyone agreed."
- Object: **我看过所有的书。** – "I've read all the books." With the books as the topic, 都 alone does the job: 这些书我都看过.

我看过所有的书。
wǒ kàn guo suǒ yǒu de shū
Word guide: 我 – I; 看 – read; 过 – (experience); 所有 – all; 书 – books.

22.1.4 Add 都 when it is the subject

- As a subject, 所有 + noun normally needs 都: 所有的人都来了, not 所有的人来了.
- 所有 goes before a noun; it is not an adverb: 我们都去, not 我们所有去.

22.1.5 所有 versus 一切 and 全部

- 一切 = everything, often abstract: 一切都会好的 – “Everything will be fine.”
- 全部 = the whole, all of it: 钱全部花完了 – “The money is all spent.”

一切都会好的。
yí qiè dōu huì hǎo de
Word guide: 一切 – everything; 都 – all; 会 – will; 好 – be fine.

22.1.6 Recap

- **所有 (的) + noun + 都 + verb** = all … (every one).
- Needs 都 as a subject; 一切 = everything (abstract), 全部 = all of it.

Practise this pattern step by step.

22.2 ■ … 之一 (one of)

22.2.1 Showing friends the sights

- You are introducing China’s great sights to visiting friends.
- **长城是世界上最有名的建筑之一。** – “The Great Wall is one of the most famous structures in the world.”

22.2.2 … 之一 = one of …

- **(group) + 之一** = “one of (the group)”: 原因之一, 最好的朋友之一.
- The group comes first, with 之一 at the end.

他是我最好的朋友之一。
tā shì wǒ zuì hǎo de péng you zhī yī
Word guide: 他 – he; 是 – is; 我 – my; 最好 – best; 朋友 – friends; 之一 – one of.



22.2.3 Reasons, problems, features

- **天气不好是比赛取消的原因之一。** – “Bad weather was one of the reasons the match was cancelled.”
- **熊猫是中国的象征之一。** – “The panda is one of China’s symbols.”

熊猫是中国的象征之一。
xióng māo shì Zhōng guó de xiàng zhēng zhī yī
Word guide: 熊猫 – the panda; 是 – is; 中国 – China’s; 象征 – symbols; 之一 – one

of.

22.2.4 之一 goes last

- Say 最好的朋友之一, not 之一最好的朋友 (English word order).
- Do not add 一个: 原因之一, not 一个原因之一.

22.2.5 之一 and fractions

- 之 also appears in fractions: 三分之一 = one third. In 之一 alone, it means "one of".
- **其中之一** = one of them: 这三本书，其中之一是我写的.

其中之一是我写的。
qí zhōng zhī yī shì wǒ xiě de
Word guide: 其中 – among them; 之一 – one; 是 – is; 我 – by me; 写 – written.

22.2.6 Recap

- **Group + 之一** = one of …: 最有名的 … 之一, 原因之一.
- 之一 goes last; no 一个 in front; 其中之一 = one of them.

Practise this pattern step by step.

22.3 ■ 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

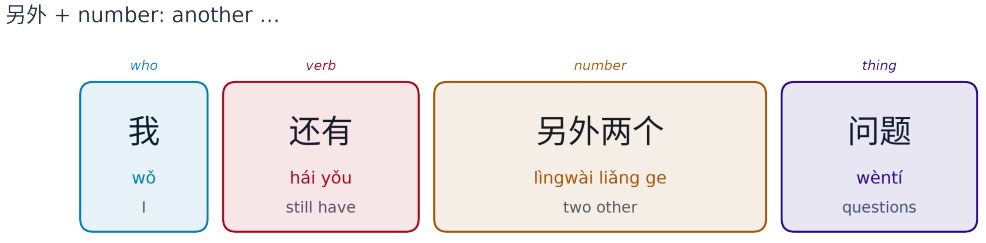
22.3.1 Two more questions

- You have answered the first question in an interview, and the interviewer has more.
- **我还有另外两个问题。** – "I have another two questions."

22.3.2 另外 + number + MW + noun

- **另外 + (number) + MW + noun** = "another / the other": 另外一个人, 另外两本书.
- It can also take 的: 另外的办法 – "another way".

另外一个人是我同学。
lìng wài yí gè rén shì wǒ tóng xué
Word guide: 另外 – the other; 一个 – one; 人 – person; 是 – is; 我 – my; 同学 – classmate.



22.3.3 The rest of a group

- **三个人里，一个是老师，另外两个是学生。** – "Of the three, one is a teacher and the other two are students."
- 另外 picks out the remaining members after one has been mentioned.

一个是老师，另外两个是学生。
yí gè shì lǎo shī lìng wài liǎng gè shì xué sheng
Word guide: 一个 – one; 是 – is; 老师 – a teacher; 另外 – the other; 两个 – two; 是 – are; 学生 – students.

22.3.4 Order of 另外 and the number

- Put 另外 before the number: 另外两个, not 两个另外.
- 另外 + noun phrase = the other / another; 另外， … at the start = in addition (a new point).

22.3.5 另外 versus 别的 and 其他

- 别的 = other (any other, unspecified): 你还有别的问题吗?
- 其他 = the other(s), the rest: 其他人都走了. 另外 often comes with a number.

其他人都走了。
qí tā rén dōu zǒu le
Word guide: 其他 – the other; 人 – people; 都 – all; 走 – left.

22.3.6 Recap

- **另外 + number + MW + noun** = another / the other …: 另外两个问题.
- 另外 goes before the number; 别的 = any other; 其他 = the rest.

Practise this pattern step by step.

22.4 ■ Practice without the models

22.4.1 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

2201.1 Complete: "All the shops are closed." 所有的商店 …… 关门了。

2201.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我们所有来了。
- B. 所有的人都来了。
- C. 所有的人来了。
- D. 人所有都来了。

2201.3 Build: "I've read all the books."

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 书。/ 所有的 / 看过

2201.4 一切都会好的 means "Everything will be fine."

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2201.5 Your teacher makes an announcement to the whole school. Close the examples.

Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

22.4.2 ... 之一 (one of)

2202.1 Complete: "She is one of my best friends." 她是我最好的朋友 ……。

2202.2 Which phrase is correct?

- A. 一个中国最大的城市之一
- B. 中国最大的城市之一
- C. 中国之一最大的城市
- D. 之一中国最大的城市

2202.3 Build: "The panda is one of China's symbols."

Arrange all chunks: 熊猫 / 之一。/ 是 / 中国的象征

2202.4 其中之一 means "one of them".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2202.5 You are introducing China's great sights to visiting friends. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

22.4.3 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

2203.1 Complete: "This one is mine; the other one is my brother's." 这个是我的，…… 一个是我弟弟的。

2203.2 Which phrase is correct?

- A. 另外两个学生
- B. 另外学生两个
- C. 两个另外学生
- D. 两个学生另外

2203.3 Build: "One is a teacher; the other two are students."

Arrange all chunks: 另外两个 / 是学生。/ ， / 一个是老师

2203.4 你还有别的问题吗 asks about any other questions.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2203.5 You have answered the first question in an interview, and the interviewer has more. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

22.5 ■ Answers and explanations

22.5.1 所有 (的) + Noun (all)

2201.1 都

所有 + noun as subject takes 都.

2201.2 B. 所有的人都来了。

所有的人都来了 is right: 所有的 + noun is a whole group, so the verb needs 都. 所有 cannot follow the noun, and 我们所有 is not used.

2201.3 我看过所有的书。

所有的 + noun as the object.

2201.4 True.

一切 = everything (often abstract).

2201.5 One possible response: 所有的学生都要参加明天的考试。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- As a subject, 所有 + noun normally needs 都: 所有的人都来了, not 所有的人来了.
- 所有 goes before a noun; it is not an adverb: 我们都去, not 我们所有去.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

22.5.2 ... 之一 (one of)

2202.1 之一

Group + 之一 = one of.

2202.2 B. 中国最大的城市之一

The group comes first, 之一 last.

2202.3 熊猫是中国的象征之一。

X 是 + group + 之一.

2202.4 True.

其中 refers back to the group.

2202.5 One possible response: 长城是世界上最有名的建筑之一。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Say 最好的朋友之一, not 之一最好的朋友 (English word order).

- Do not add 一个: 原因之一, not 一个原因之一.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

22.5.3 另外 + Number + MW + Noun (another)

2203.1 另外

另外 + number + MW = the other one.

2203.2 A. 另外两个学生

另外 comes before the number.

2203.3 一个是老师，另外两个是学生。

另外 picks out the remaining members.

2203.4 True.

True. 别的 means "other, any other": 你还有别的问题吗? "Do you have any other questions?"

2203.5 One possible response: 我还有另外两个问题。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 另外 before the number: 另外两个, not 两个另外.
- 另外 + noun phrase = the other / another; 另外，… at the start = in addition (a new point).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

23 Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

23.1 ■ 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

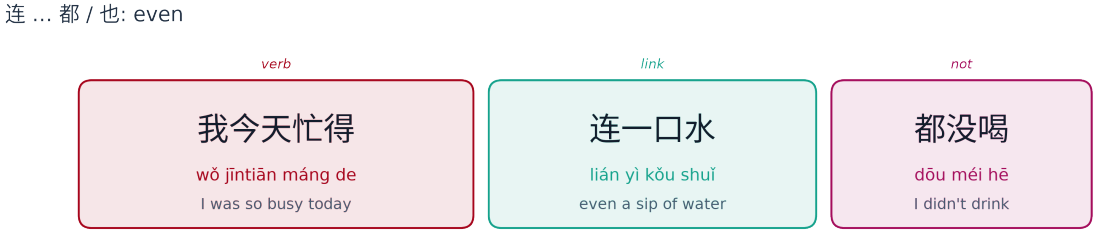
23.1.1 A day with no break

- You were so busy at work that you didn't have a single break.
- **我今天忙得连一口水都没喝。** – "I was so busy today I didn't even have a sip of water."

23.1.2 连 + X + 都 / 也 + 不 / 没 + Verb

- **连 X 都/也 + negative** = "not even X": X is the smallest or easiest thing, and still it didn't happen.
- X moves before the verb: 连他的名字都不知道.

我连他的名字都不知道。
wǒ lián tā de míng zi dōu bù zhī dào
Word guide: 我 – I; 连 – even; 他 – his; 名字 – name; 都 – (even); 不 – don't; 知道 – know.



23.1.3 The minimum didn't happen

- **他连一个字都没写。** – "He didn't write a single character."
- **这么简单的题，他连看都没看就交了。** – "Such an easy question, and he handed it in without even looking at it."

他连一个字都没写。
tā lián yí gè zì dōu méi xiě
Word guide: 他 – he; 连 – even; 一个 – one; 字 – character; 都 – (even); 没 – didn't; 写 – write.

23.1.4 X before the verb

- The 连 phrase comes before the verb: 连饭都没吃, not 没吃连饭.
- Keep 都 / 也: 连水没喝 is incomplete; say 连水都没喝.

23.1.5 连 + Verb + 都 + 没 + Verb

- The same verb can repeat: **他连想都没想就答应了。** – "He agreed without even thinking."
- This shows how little effort or care was taken.

他连想都没想就答应了。
tā lián xiǎng dōu méi xiǎng jiù dā ying le
Word guide: 他 – he; 连 – even; 想 – think; 都 – (even); 没 – didn't; 想 – think; 就 – then; 答应 – agreed.

23.1.6 Recap

- **连 X 都 / 也 + 不 / 没 + Verb** = not even X.
- X goes before the verb; keep 都 / 也. 连想都没想 = without even thinking.

Practise this pattern step by step.

23.2 ■ 为 ... 而 ... (for the sake of)

23.2.1 Working for a dream

- Your cousin works two jobs to save for university.
- **他为了上大学而努力工作。** – "He works hard in order to go to university."

23.2.2 为 (了) + goal + 而 + action

- **为 (了) A 而 B** = "do B for the sake of A": a formal way to link a purpose with an action.
- 而 links the purpose to the verb that follows: 为理想而奋斗 – "strive for the ideal".

我们为理想而奋斗。
wǒ men wèi lǐ xiǎng ér fèn dòu
Word guide: 我们 – we; 为 – for; 理想 – our ideals; 而 – (and); 奋斗 – strive.



23.2.3 Feelings caused by something

- **为 + cause + 而 + feeling**: **大家都为他的成功而高兴。** – "Everyone was happy about his success."
- **不要为小事而生气。** – "Don't get angry over small things."

大家都为他的成功而高兴。
dà jiā dōu wèi tā de chéng gōng ér gāo xìng
Word guide: 大家 – everyone; 都 – all; 为 – about; 他 – his; 成功 – success; 而 – (and); 高兴 – happy.

23.2.4 Formal, and 为 is wèi

- In this pattern 为 is read wèi ("for"); it is written or formal speech. In chat, 为了 …, 我 … is enough.
- 而 does not mean "but" here; it links the purpose or cause to the action.

23.2.5 为 ... 而 ... versus 为了

- 为了 + goal, clause: 为了上大学，他努力工作 – the everyday form.
- 为 … 而 … puts the goal and action in one tight phrase, common in speeches and slogans.

为了上大学，他努力工作。
wèi le shàng dà xué tā nǔ lì gōng zuò
Word guide: 为了 – in order to; 上 – go to; 大学 – university; 他 – he; 努力 – hard; 工作 – works.

23.2.6 Recap

- **为 (了) A 而 B** = do B for the sake of A; **为 + cause + 而 + feeling** = feel … about.
- Formal; 为 = wèi; 而 links, it is not "but".

Practise this pattern step by step.

23.3 ■ 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

23.3.1 Any questions?

- At the end of the lesson your teacher wants to be sure everyone understood.
- **有任何问题，都可以问我。** – "If you have any questions at all, you can ask me."

23.3.2 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也

- **任何 + noun** = "any (at all)"; 都 or 也 usually follows: 任何人都可以参加.
- In the negative: 任何人都不知道 / 他没有任何问题 – "nobody / no … at all".

任何人都可以参加。
rèn hé rén dōu kě yǐ cān jiā
Word guide: 任何 – any; 人 – person; 都 – (all); 可以 – can; 参加 – take part.

任何 …，都 …: any …



23.3.3 Total statements

- **我不会告诉任何人。** – “I won’t tell anyone.”
- **任何时候你都可以给我打电话。** – “You can call me any time.”

我不会告诉任何人。
wǒ bú huì gào su rèn hé rén
Word guide: 我 – I; 不 – won’t; 会 – (will); 告诉 – tell; 任何 – any; 人 – person.

23.3.4 Add 都 as a subject

- As a subject, 任何 + noun needs 都 / 也: 任何人都知道, not 任何人知道.
- 任何 goes before a noun only; it does not stand alone: 任何人, not just 任何.

23.3.5 任何 versus question word + 都

- Spoken: 谁都可以来 – “Anyone can come.”
- 任何人都可以来 says the same in a more formal way.

谁都可以来。
shéi dōu kě yǐ lái
Word guide: 谁 – anyone; 都 – (all); 可以 – can; 来 – come.

23.3.6 Recap

- **任何 + noun + 都 / 也** = any … at all; negative = no … at all.
- Needs a noun and, as a subject, 都 / 也. 谁都 is the spoken equivalent.

Practise this pattern step by step.

23.4 ■ 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

23.4.1 Good-looking and practical

- You are recommending a backpack to a friend.
- **这个包既好看又实用。** – “This bag is both good-looking and practical.”

23.4.2 既 A 又 / 也 B = both A and B

- **既 A 又 B** joins two qualities or actions of the same subject; 又 / 也 introduces the second.
- It sounds a little more formal and balanced than 又 … 又 ….

她既聪明又努力。
tā jì cōng ming yòu nǔ lì
Word guide: 她 – she; 既 – both; 聪明 – clever; 又 – and; 努力 – hard-working.

既 … 又 …: both … and …



23.4.3 Two roles or two actions

- **他既是老师，也是作家。** – “He is both a teacher and a writer.”
- **我们既要学习，也要休息。** – “We need both to study and to rest.”

我们既要学习，也要休息。
wǒ men jì yào xué xí yě yào xiū xi
Word guide: 我们 – we; 既 – both; 要 – need to; 学习 – study; 也 – also; 要 – need to; 休息 – rest.

23.4.4 Same subject, same direction

- Both parts belong to one subject: 他既 … 又 …, not 他既 …，她又 ….
- The two qualities should fit together (both good, both bad); for a contrast use 但是.

23.4.5 既 … 又 … versus 不但 … 而且 …

- 既 … 又 … gives two qualities equal weight.
- 不但 … 而且 … builds up: the second point is stronger: 不但便宜，而且质量很好.

不但便宜，而且质量很好。
bú dàn pián yi ér qiě zhì liàng hěn hǎo
Word guide: 不但 – not only; 便宜 – cheap; 而且 – but also; 质量 – quality; 很 – very; 好 – good.

23.4.6 Recap

- **既 A 又 / 也 B** = both A and B (same subject, equal weight).
- 不但 … 而且 … builds up to a stronger second point.

Practise this pattern step by step.

23.5 ■ 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

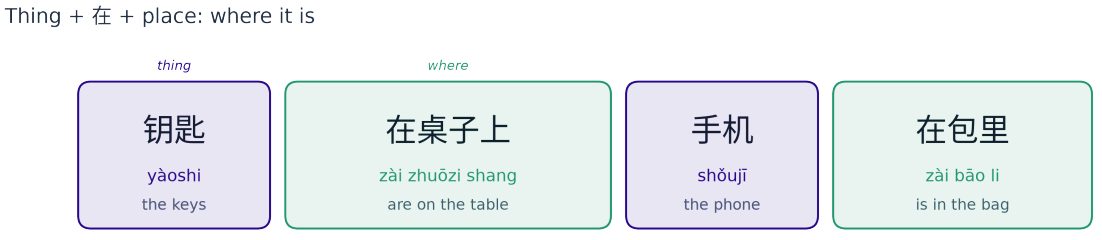
23.5.1 Where did I put it?

- You can't find your keys and your roommate helps you look.
- **钥匙在桌子上，手机在包里。** – "The keys are on the table, and the phone is in the bag."

23.5.2 在 + place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边

- **在 + noun + location word** = on / under / in / beside: 在桌子上, 在床下, 在包里, 在门旁边.
- Most ordinary nouns need the location word: 在桌子上, not 在桌子.

猫在床下。
māo zài chuáng xià
Word guide: 猫 – the cat; 在 – is; 床 – the bed; 下 – under.



23.5.3 Doing something somewhere

- Before a verb: **他在图书馆里看书。** – "He's reading in the library."
- After a verb: **把书放在桌子上。** – "Put the book on the table."

把书放在桌子上。
bǎ shū fàng zài zhuō zi shang
Word guide: 书 – the book; 放 – put; 在 – on; 桌子 – the table; 上 – (on).

23.5.4 When to drop the location word

- Ordinary objects need it: 在书包里, not 在书包.
- Place names and places that are already locations do not: 在北京, 在学校, not 在北京里.

23.5.5 上 / 里 / 中 for abstract places

- 在电视上 / 在网上 = on TV / online; 在报纸上 = in the newspaper.
- 在心里 = in one's heart; 在生活中 = in life. Fixed phrases are worth learning as chunks.

我在网上买的。
wǒ zài wǎng shàng mǎi de
Word guide: 我 – I; 在 – on; 网上 – the internet; 买 – bought.

23.5.6 Recap

- **在 + noun + 上/下/里/旁边** = on/under/in/beside; ordinary nouns need the location word.
- Place names do not (在北京). Fixed phrases: 在网上, 在报纸上, 在生活中.

Practise this pattern step by step.

23.6 ■ Practice without the models

23.6.1 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

2301.1 Complete: "He doesn't even know my name." 他 …… 我的名字都不知道。

2301.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他没吃连早饭。
- B. 他连早饭没吃。
- C. 连他都早饭没吃。
- D. 他连早饭都没吃。

2301.3 Build: "He agreed without even thinking."

Arrange all chunks: 就 / 都没想 / 他连想 / 答应了。

2301.4 他连一个字都没写 means he wrote a lot.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2301.5 You were so busy at work that you didn't have a single break. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

23.6.2 为 ... 而 ... (for the sake of)

2302.1 Complete (formal): "Strive for your dreams." 为梦想 …… 奋斗。

2302.2 In 不要为小事而生气, what does 而 do?

- A. means "but"
- B. links the cause to the feeling
- C. asks a question
- D. means "and then later"

2302.3 Build: “Everyone was happy about his success.”

Arrange all chunks: 大家都 / 高兴。/ 而 / 为他的成功

2302.4 为了 …, … is the more everyday form.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2302.5 Your cousin works two jobs to save for university. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

23.6.3 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

2303.1 Complete: “Anyone can take part.” …… 人都可以参加。

2303.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 人任何都知道这件事。
- B. 任何人都知道这件事。
- C. 任何都人知道这件事。
- D. 任何人知道这件事。

2303.3 Build: “I won’t tell anyone.”

Arrange all chunks: 不会告诉 / 我 / 人。/ 任何

2303.4 谁都可以来 is a spoken way to say 任何人都可以来.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2303.5 At the end of the lesson your teacher wants to be sure everyone understood. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

23.6.4 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

2304.1 Complete: “This dish is both cheap and tasty.” 这个菜既便宜 …… 好吃。

2304.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 他既高又瘦。
- B. 他高既又瘦。
- C. 既他高又瘦。
- D. 他既高，她又瘦。

2304.3 Build: “He is both a teacher and a writer.”

Arrange all chunks: 他既是老师 / 也是 / ， / 作家。

2304.4 不但 … 而且 … usually makes the second point stronger.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2304.5 You are recommending a backpack to a friend. Close the examples. Say a

Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

23.6.5 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

2305.1 Complete: "The phone is in the bag." 手机在包 ……。

2305.2 Which is correct?

- A. 他北京在工作。
- B. 他在桌子工作。
- C. 他在北京里工作。
- D. 他在北京工作。

2305.3 Build: "Put the book on the table."

Arrange all chunks: 上。 / 桌子 / 把书 / 放在

2305.4 在网上 means "online".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2305.5 You can't find your keys and your roommate helps you look. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

23.7 ■ Answers and explanations

23.7.1 连 ... 都 ... 不 / 没 (not even)

2301.1 连

连 X 都 + negative = not even X.

2301.2 D. 他连早饭都没吃。

他连早饭都没吃 is right: 连 + X + 都/也 + 没 + verb. Without 都 the sentence is incomplete, and 连 must come right before the item it stresses.

2301.3 他连想都没想就答应了。

连 + V + 都没 + V + 就 ….

2301.4 False.

He didn't write a single character.

2301.5 One possible response: 我今天忙得连一口水都没喝。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The 连 phrase comes before the verb: 连饭都没吃, not 没吃连饭.
- Keep 都 / 也: 连水没喝 is incomplete; say 连水都没喝.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

23.7.2 为 ... 而 ... (for the sake of)

2302.1 而

为 A 而 B links the purpose and the action.

2302.2 B. links the cause to the feeling

In 为 + cause + 而 + verb, 而 links the cause to the reaction: 不要为小事而生气 "Don't get angry over small things." It does not mean "but" here.

2302.3 大家都为他的成功而高兴。

为 + cause + 而 + feeling.

2302.4 True.

True. 为了 …, … is the everyday way to state a purpose. 为 … 而 … is more formal and written.

2302.5 One possible response: 他为了上大学而努力工作。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- In this pattern 为 is read wèi ("for"); it is written or formal speech. In chat, 为了 …, 我 … is enough.
- 而 does not mean "but" here; it links the purpose or cause to the action.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

23.7.3 任何 + Noun + 都 / 也 (any)

2303.1 任何

任何 + noun + 都.

2303.2 B. 任何人都知道这件事。

任何人都知道这件事 is right: 任何 + noun as the subject needs 都 before the verb, and 任何 always comes before its noun.

2303.3 我不会告诉任何人。

Negative verb + 任何 + noun.

2303.4 True.

QW + 都 is the spoken equivalent.

2303.5 One possible response: 有任何问题，都可以问我。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- As a subject, 任何 + noun needs 都 / 也: 任何人都知道, not 任何人知道.
- 任何 goes before a noun only; it does not stand alone: 任何人, not just 任何.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

23.7.4 既 … 也 / 又 … (both … and …)

2304.1 又

既 A 又 B (既 A 也 B is also correct).

2304.2 A. 他既高又瘦。

他既高又瘦 is right: 既 A 又 B describes one subject, with both words after it. A second subject (她) breaks the pattern.

2304.3 他既是老师，也是作家。

既是 …，也是 ….

2304.4 True.

It builds up; 既 … 又 … gives equal weight.

2304.5 One possible response: 这个包既好看又实用。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Both parts belong to one subject: 他既 … 又 …, not 他既 …，她又 ….
- The two qualities should fit together (both good, both bad); for a contrast use 但是.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

23.7.5 在 + Place + 上 / 下 / 里 / 旁边 (location)

2305.1 里

在 + noun + 里 = in.

2305.2 D. 他在北京工作。

Place names take no location word.

2305.3 把书放在桌子上。

Verb + 在 + noun + 上.

2305.4 True.

It is a fixed abstract location.

2305.5 One possible response: 钥匙在桌子上，手机在包里。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Ordinary objects need it: 在书包里, not 在书包.
- Place names and places that are already locations do not: 在北京, 在学校, not 在北京里.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24 Basic/Simple Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

24.1 ■ 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

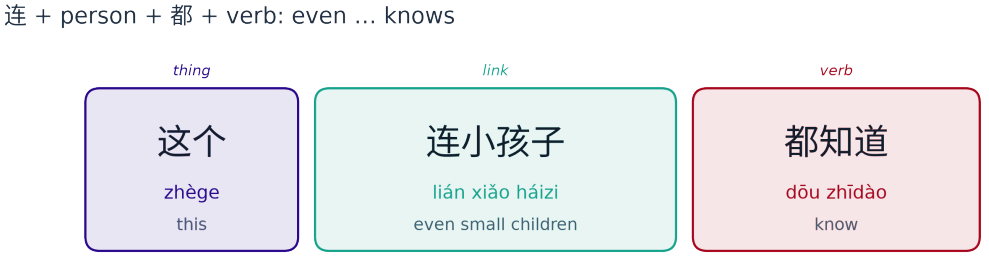
24.1.1 A hot stove

- A friend doesn't know that you shouldn't touch a hot stove.
- **这个连小孩子都知道！** – "Even a small child knows that!"

24.1.2 连 + X + 都 / 也 + Verb = even X

- **连 X 都/也 + verb** = "even X": X is the least likely case, so the statement is strong.
- The 连 phrase comes before the verb: 连他都来了 – "Even he came."

连他都来了。
lián tā dōu lái le
Word guide: 连 – even; 他 – he; 都 – (even); 来 – came.



24.1.3 Surprising subjects and objects

- Subject: **连老师也不知道答案。** – "Even the teacher doesn't know the answer."
- Object moved forward: **他连周末都在工作。** – "He works even at weekends."

他连周末都在工作。
tā lián zhōu mò dōu zài gōng zuò
Word guide: 他 – he; 连 – even; 周末 – at weekends; 都 – (even); 在 – (is); 工作 – working.

24.1.4 Keep 都 / 也

- 连 needs 都 or 也 after X: 连他都来了, not 连他来了.
- Choose X as the most surprising case; 连 + ordinary item sounds odd.

24.1.5 Positive 连 versus negative 连

- Positive: 连小孩子都会 – even a child can do it (so it's easy).
- Negative: 连一个字都不会写 – can't write even one character (so it's hopeless).

他连一个字都不会写。
tā lián yí gè zì dōu bú huì xiě
Word guide: 他 – he; 连 – even; 一个 – one; 字 – character; 都 – (even); 不 – can't; 会 – (can); 写 – write.

24.1.6 Recap

- **连 X 都 / 也 + Verb** = even X …; X is the most surprising case.
- Keep 都 / 也; negative forms mean "not even".

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.2 ■ Question Word + 都 (every)

24.2.1 Anywhere is fine

- Your friend asks where you want to eat. You are hungry and not fussy.
- **哪儿都行，你选吧。** – "Anywhere is fine; you choose."

24.2.2 Question word + 都 = every-, any-

- **谁都** (everyone), **什么都** (everything), **哪儿都** (everywhere), **什么时候都** (any time), **怎么都** (however).
- The QW goes before 都 and the verb.

他什么都会。
tā shén me dōu huì
Word guide: 他 – he; 什么 – anything; 都 – all; 会 – can do.



24.2.3 Negatives: no one, nothing

- **我什么都不想吃。** – "I don't want to eat anything."
- **怎么都找不到。** – "I can't find it no matter how I look."

我怎么都找不到。

wǒ zěn me dōu zhǎo bu dào
Word guide: 我 – I; 怎么 – however; 都 – (still); 找 – look; 不 – (can't); 到 – find.

24.2.4 QW first

- 我什么都吃, not 我吃什么都: the QW moves before 都.
- With a noun: 哪个 / 什么 + noun + 都: 什么菜都好吃.

24.2.5 Versus 不管 + QW

- QW + 都 is short and spoken: 谁都可以来.
- 不管 + QW，都 … spells out the condition: 不管谁来，我都欢迎.

不管谁来，我都欢迎。
bù guǎn shéi lái wǒ dōu huān yíng
Word guide: 不管 – no matter; 谁 – who; 来 – comes; 我 – I; 都 – (all); 欢迎 – welcome.

24.2.6 Recap

- **QW + 都 + verb** = every- / any-; with 不 / 没 = no- / nothing.
- QW before 都; 不管 + QW is the longer form.

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.3 ■ A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

24.3.1 Three times as big

- You compare your new flat with the tiny room you rented before.
- **现在的房子是以前的三倍。** – "My place now is three times the size of my old one."

24.3.2 A 是 B 的 N 倍 = A is N times B

- **A 是 B 的 N 倍** = A is N times (as big / many as) B.
- 倍 is a measure of multiples: 两倍, 三倍, 十倍.

这个城市的人口是那个的两倍。
zhè ge chéng shì de rén kǒu shì nà ge de liǎng bèi
Word guide: 这个 – this; 城市 – city; 人口 – population; 是 – is; 那个 – that; 两 – two; 倍 – times.



24.3.3 比 + 多 / 增加 + N 倍

- **A 比 B 多一倍** = A is one time more than B, i.e. double.
- **价格增加了一倍。** – "The price has doubled." 增加了 N 倍 counts the increase on top of the original.

今年的学生比去年多一倍。
jīn nián de xué sheng bǐ qù nián duō yí bèi
Word guide: 今年 – this year; 学生 – students; 比 – than; 去年 – last year; 多 – more; 一倍 – one time.

24.3.4 "Is N times" versus "N times more"

- 是 … 的两倍 = twice as much (×2), and so is 比 … 多一倍. In careful usage, 比 … 多两倍 = ×3.
- 倍 is for increases; for "half as much", use 一半: A 是 B 的一半.

24.3.5 倍 versus 次

- 倍 = times as much (multiples).
- 次 = times (occasions): 我去过三次 – "I've been three times."

我去过三次。
wǒ qù guo sān cì
Word guide: 我 – I; 去 – go; 过 – (experience); 三次 – three times.

24.3.6 Recap

- **A 是 B 的 N 倍** = A is N times B; **A 比 B 多一倍** = double.
- "Half as much" = 一半; occasions are counted with 次.

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.4 ■ 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

24.4.1 A boring horror film

- A friend asks if the horror film was scary. You thought it was boring.
- **一点儿也不可怕。** – "It wasn't scary at all."

24.4.2 一点儿 + 也 / 都 + 不 / 没 + Adj / Verb

- **一点儿也不 + Adj** = "not … at all": 一点儿也不冷, 一点儿都不贵.
- With verbs: 一点儿也不想去, 一点儿也没变.

今天一点儿也不冷。
jīn tiān yì diǎnr yě bù lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 一点儿 – a bit; 也 – even; 不 – not; 冷 – cold.

一点儿也不: not ... at all



24.4.3 Strong denial

- **我一点儿都不累。** – "I'm not tired in the slightest."
- **他一点儿也没变，还是那么年轻。** – "He hasn't changed at all; he still looks so young."

他一点儿也没变。
tā yì diǎnr yě méi biàn
Word guide: 他 – he; 一点儿 – a bit; 也 – even; 没 – hasn't; 变 – changed.

24.4.4 Order and the negative

- Put 一点儿也 before 不 / 没: 一点儿也不冷, not 不一点儿冷.
- It needs a negative; 一点儿也冷 is wrong. "A bit cold" is 有点儿冷.

24.4.5 一点儿也不 versus 有点儿 and 不太

- 有点儿冷 = a bit cold; 不太冷 = not very cold.
- 一点儿也不冷 = not cold at all (the strongest).

今天不太冷。
jīn tiān bú tài lěng
Word guide: 今天 – today; 不太 – not very; 冷 – cold.

24.4.6 Recap

- **一点儿 + 也/都 + 不/没 + Adj/Verb** = not … at all.
- Needs a negative; scale: 不太 → 一点儿也不 (strongest).

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.5 ■ 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

24.5.1 Which present?

- It's your mother's birthday tomorrow and you still haven't chosen a gift.
- **我不知道送什么好。** – "I don't know what would be best to give."

24.5.2 不知道 + Verb + QW + 好

- **不知道 + verb + question word + 好** = “don’t know what / which / how it would be best to …”.
- 好 at the end means “would be good, best”: 不知道买哪个好.

我不知道买哪个好。
wǒ bù zhī dào mǎi nǎ ge hǎo
Word guide: 我 – I; 不 – don’t; 知道 – know; 买 – buy; 哪个 – which one; 好 – (is best).



24.5.3 Choices between options

- **我不知道去北京好还是去上海好。** – “I don’t know whether it’s better to go to Beijing or Shanghai.”
- **他不知道怎么办好。** – “He didn’t know what to do.”

他不知道怎么办好。
tā bù zhī dào zěn me bàn hǎo
Word guide: 他 – he; 不 – didn’t; 知道 – know; 怎么 – how; 办 – to handle it; 好 – (best).

24.5.4 A statement, not a question

- The question word is embedded, so there is no question mark: 不知道买什么好。
- 好 goes at the end of the embedded choice, not after 知道: 不知道说什么好, not 不知道好说什么.

24.5.5 Asking for advice

- Turn it into a question with 你说: **你说我买哪个好?** – “Which do you think I should buy?”
- Or with 吗: 你知道买哪个好吗?

你说我买哪个好?
nǐ shuō wǒ mǎi nǎ ge hǎo
Word guide: 你 – you; 说 – say; 我 – I; 买 – buy; 哪个 – which one; 好 – (is best).

24.5.6 Recap

- **不知道 + Verb + QW + 好** = don't know what / which / how is best.
- 好 closes the embedded choice; ask advice with 你说 … 好?

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.6 ■ 对 … 来说 (for / as far as … is concerned)

24.6.1 For me, it's hard

- Your classmate finds Chinese tones easy, but you don't.
- **对我来说，声调很难。** – "For me, tones are hard."

24.6.2 对 + person + 来说，… = for, as far as … is concerned

- **对 X 来说** gives the point of view from which something is judged.
- It usually starts the sentence, followed by a comma.

对我来说，声调很难。
duì wǒ lái shuō shēng diào hěn nán
Word guide: 对 – for; 我 – me; 来说 – (as far as … goes); 声调 – tones; 很 – very; 难 – hard.



24.6.3 Groups and things too

- **对学生来说，时间最重要。** – "For students, time is the most important thing."
- **对这个城市来说，旅游很重要。** – "Tourism is very important for this city."

对学生来说，时间最重要。
duì xué sheng lái shuō shí jiān zuì zhòng yào
Word guide: 对 – for; 学生 – students; 来说 – (as far as … goes); 时间 – time; 最 – most; 重要 – important.

24.6.4 Keep all three parts

- Use the full frame 对 … 来说: 对我来说, not 对我说 (that means "said to me").
- The judgement follows: 对他来说，这不是问题.

24.6.5 对 … 来说 versus 在 … 看来

- 对 … 来说 = how it affects or matters to someone: 对我来说很难.
- 在 … 看来 = someone's opinion: 在我看来，这个办法不好.

在我看来，这个办法不好。
zài wǒ kàn lái zhè ge bàn fǎ bù hǎo
Word guide: 在 – in; 我 – my; 看来 – view; 这个 – this; 办法 – method; 不 – not; 好 – good.

24.6.6 Recap

- **对 X 来说，...** = for X / as far as X is concerned.
- Keep 来说 (对我说 = said to me); 在 … 看来 = in someone's opinion.

Practise this pattern step by step.

24.7 ■ Practice without the models

24.7.1 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

2401.1 Complete: "Even my grandma uses WeChat." …… 我奶奶都用微信。

2401.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 老师连也不知道。
- B. 连老师也不知道。
- C. 连老师不知道。
- D. 连也老师不知道。

2401.3 Build: "He works even at weekends."

Arrange all chunks: 工作。/ 都在 / 他 / 连周末

2401.4 连小孩子都会 suggests the task is easy.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2401.5 A friend doesn't know that you shouldn't touch a hot stove. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.7.2 Question Word + 都 (every)

2402.1 Complete: "He can do anything." 他 …… 都会。

2402.2 Which says "Every dish is delicious"?

- A. 菜什么都好吃。
- B. 都什么菜好吃。
- C. 好吃什么菜都。
- D. 什么菜都好吃。

2402.3 Build: “I can’t find it no matter how I look.”

Arrange all chunks: 找 / 我 / 不到。/ 怎么都

2402.4 谁都可以来 means “Anyone can come.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2402.5 Your friend asks where you want to eat. You are hungry and not fussy. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.7.3 A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

2403.1 Complete: “Her salary is twice his.” 她的工资是他的两 ……。

2403.2 B has 10 books. ’A 比 B 多一倍’ – how many does A have?

- A. 11
- B. 5
- C. 20
- D. 30

2403.3 Build: “This city’s population is twice that city’s.”

Arrange all chunks: 倍。/ 这个城市的人口 / 两 / 是那个的

2403.4 我去过三倍 means “I’ve been three times.”

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2403.5 You compare your new flat with the tiny room you rented before. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.7.4 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

2404.1 Complete: “This isn’t expensive at all.” 这个一点儿 …… 不贵。

2404.2 Which is the strongest denial?

- A. 一点儿也不难。
- B. 比较难。
- C. 不太难。
- D. 有点儿难。

2404.3 Build: “He hasn’t changed at all.”

Arrange all chunks: 也没 / 他 / 一点儿 / 变。

2404.4 一点儿也冷 means “a little cold”.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2404.5 A friend asks if the horror film was scary. You thought it was boring. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.7.5 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

2405.1 Complete: "I don't know what to say." 我不知道说什么 ……。

2405.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我不知道买好哪个。
- B. 我不知道好买哪个。
- C. 好我不知道买哪个。
- D. 我不知道买哪个好。

2405.3 Build: "He didn't know what to do."

Arrange all chunks: 好。 / 怎么办 / 不知道 / 他

2405.4 你说我买哪个好? asks someone for advice.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2405.5 It's your mother's birthday tomorrow and you still haven't chosen a gift. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.7.6 对 ... 来说 (for / as far as ... is concerned)

2406.1 Complete: "For me, this isn't a problem." 对我 ……，这不是问题。

2406.2 What does 他对我说 mean?

- A. In his opinion
- B. As far as I'm concerned
- C. He said to me
- D. For him, I …

2406.3 Build: "For students, time is the most important thing."

Arrange all chunks: 最重要。 / 对学生来说 / ， / 时间

2406.4 在我看来 introduces an opinion.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2406.5 Your classmate finds Chinese tones easy, but you don't. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

24.8 ■ Answers and explanations

24.8.1 连 ... 都 / 也 (even)

2401.1 连

连 X 都 = even X.

2401.2 B. 连老师也不知道。

连老师也不知道 is right: 连 + X + 也/都 + verb. Leaving out 也/都 is wrong, and 连 must come directly before 老师.

2401.3 他连周末都在工作。

Subject + 连 X + 都 + verb.

2401.4 True.

If even a child can, it must be easy.

2401.5 One possible response: 这个连小孩子都知道!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 连 needs 都 or 也 after X: 连他都来了, not 连他来了.
- Choose X as the most surprising case; 连 + ordinary item sounds odd.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24.8.2 Question Word + 都 (every)

2402.1 什么

什么 + 都 = everything / anything.

2402.2 D. 什么菜都好吃。

Question word + noun + 都 means "every": 什么菜都好吃 "Every dish is delicious." 什么 must come directly before the noun, and 都 before the predicate.

2402.3 我怎么都找不到。

怎么 + 都 + potential complement.

2402.4 True.

True. A question word before 都 means "any / every": 谁都可以来 "Anyone can come."

2402.5 One possible response: 哪儿都行，你选吧。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 我什么都吃, not 我吃什么都: the QW moves before 都.
- With a noun: 哪个 / 什么 + noun + 都: 什么菜都好吃.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24.8.3 A 是 B 的 N 倍 (N times)

2403.1 倍

A 是 B 的 N 倍.

2403.2 C. 20

One time more = double = 20.

2403.3 这个城市的人口是那个的两倍。

A 是 B 的 N 倍.

2403.4 False.

False. 倍 means "times" as a multiple (三倍 "three times as much"). Occasions are counted with 次: 我去过三次 "I've been three times."

2403.5 One possible response: 现在的房子是以前的三倍。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 是 … 的两倍 = twice as much (×2), and so is 比 … 多一倍. In careful usage, 比 … 多两倍 = ×3.
- 倍 is for increases; for "half as much", use 一半: A 是 B 的一半.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24.8.4 一点 + 也 / 都 + 不 (not at all)

2404.1 也

一点儿也/都 + 不.

2404.2 A. 一点儿也不难。

一点儿也不 + adjective is the strongest denial: 一点儿也不难 "not difficult at all". 不太难 is only "not very difficult".

2404.3 他一点儿也没变。

一点儿 + 也没 + verb.

2404.4 False.

一点儿也 needs a negative; “a bit cold” is 有点儿冷.

2404.5 One possible response: 一点儿也不可怕。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Put 一点儿也 before 不 / 没: 一点儿也不冷, not 不一点儿冷.
- It needs a negative; 一点儿也冷 is wrong. “A bit cold” is 有点儿冷.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24.8.5 不知道 + embedded choice + 好 (unsure what is best)

2405.1 好

不知道 + verb + QW + 好.

2405.2 D. 我不知道买哪个好。

我不知道买哪个好 is right: 好 closes the embedded choice “which one would be best to buy”, so it goes at the end.

2405.3 他不知道怎么办好。

不知道 + 怎么办 + 好.

2405.4 True.

你说 … 好? turns the dilemma into a question.

2405.5 One possible response: 我不知道送什么好。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- The question word is embedded, so there is no question mark: 不知道买什么好。
- 好 goes at the end of the embedded choice, not after 知道: 不知道说什么好, not 不知道好说什么.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

24.8.6 对 ... 来说 (for / as far as ... is concerned)

2406.1 来说

对 X 来说.

2406.2 C. He said to me

Without 来说, 对 + person + 说 = say to.

2406.3 对学生来说，时间最重要。

对 X 来说, then the judgement.

2406.4 True.

在 … 看来 = in someone's view.

2406.5 One possible response: 对我来说，声调很难。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use the full frame 对 … 来说: 对我来说, not 对我说 (that means "said to me").
- The judgement follows: 对他来说，这不是问题.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

25 Complex Sentence Patterns

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

25.1 ■ Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

25.1.1 Nice, but …

- Your friend loves a jacket in a shop. You agree it's pretty, but the price is crazy.
- **漂亮是漂亮，但是太贵了。** – "It's pretty, all right, but it's too expensive."

25.1.2 A 是 A，但是 / 可是 / 就是 …

- **Adj 是 Adj** concedes a point ("it is …, admittedly"); then 但是 / 可是 / 就是 brings the objection.
- The same word repeats on both sides of 是: 好是好, 便宜是便宜.

好是好，就是太远了。
hǎo shì hǎo jiù shì tài yuǎn le
Word guide: 好 – good; 是 – (it is); 好 – good; 就是 – it's just that; 太 – too; 远 – far.



25.1.3 Verbs work too

- **去是想去，可是没时间。** – "I do want to go, but I don't have time."
- **这本书我看是看了，但是没看懂。** – "I did read the book, but I didn't understand it."

去是想去，可是没时间。
qù shì xiǎng qù kě shì méi shí jiān
Word guide: 去 – go; 是 – (it is); 想 – want to; 去 – go; 可是 – but; 没 – have no; 时间 – time.

25.1.4 Repeat the same word

- Use the identical word on both sides: 贵是贵, not 贵是很贵.
- The second clause must object; 好是好，而且 … does not work.

25.1.5 Versus 虽然 … 但是 …

- 虽然很漂亮，但是太贵了 is neutral.
- 漂亮是漂亮，但是 … sounds more conversational and shows you have considered the point.

虽然很漂亮，但是太贵了。
suī rán hěn piào liang dàn shì tài guì le
Word guide: 虽然 – although; 很 – very; 漂亮 – pretty; 但是 – but; 太 – too; 贵 – expensive.

25.1.6 Recap

- **A 是 A，但是 / 可是 / 就是 …** = it's A, admittedly, but ….
- Same word twice; the second part must object.

Practise this pattern step by step.

25.2 ■ 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever)

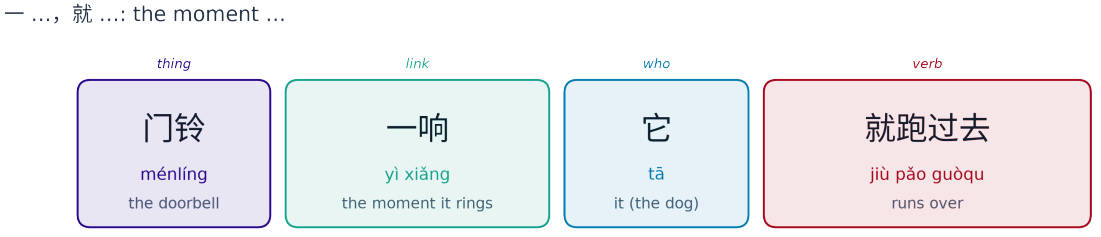
25.2.1 The moment you arrive

- Your friend's dog gets excited every time someone rings the doorbell.
- **门铃一响，它就跑过去。** – "As soon as the doorbell rings, it runs over."

25.2.2 一 A，就 B = as soon as A, B

- **一 + verb A，(Subject) 就 + verb B** = B happens immediately after A.
- 一 and 就 each go after their own subject: 我一到，他就走了.

我一到家，就下雨了。
wǒ yí dào jiā jiù xià yǔ le
Word guide: 我 – I; 一 – as soon as; 到 – arrived; 家 – home; 就 – then; 下雨 – rain.



25.2.3 Whenever: a habit

- **他一喝咖啡就睡不着。** – "Whenever he drinks coffee, he can't sleep."
- **我一看就懂了。** – "I understood the moment I looked."

他一喝咖啡就睡不着。
tā yì hē kā fēi jiù shuì bu zháo

Word guide: 他 – he; 一 – whenever; 喝 – drinks; 咖啡 – coffee; 就 – then; 睡不着 – can't sleep.

25.2.4 Placement of 一 and 就

- 一 goes before the first verb, after its subject: 我一到, not 一我到.
- 就 goes after the second subject: 他就走了, not 就他走了.

25.2.5 一 … 就 … versus 刚 … 就 …

- 一 … 就 … = whenever / as soon as (also habits).
- 刚 … 就 … = had only just … when (a single past event): 我刚到，他就走了.

我刚到，他就走了。
wǒ gāng dào tā jiù zǒu le
Word guide: 我 – I; 刚 – just; 到 – arrived; 他 – he; 就 – then; 走 – left.

25.2.6 Recap

- **一 A，就 B** = as soon as / whenever A, B.
- 一 and 就 each after their own subject; 刚 … 就 … for a single just-happened event.

Practise this pattern step by step.

25.3 ■ 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other)

25.3.1 Two sides of the story

- In a class debate, you explain why many young people move to big cities.
- **一方面，大城市机会多；另一方面，生活也更方便。** – "On the one hand, big cities have more opportunities; on the other, life is more convenient."

25.3.2 一方面 …，(另) 一方面 …

- **一方面 …，一方面 … / 另一方面 …** presents two aspects or reasons side by side.
- Each 一方面 starts its clause, usually with a comma or semicolon in between.

一方面，工资高；另一方面，离家近。
yì fāng miàn gōng zī gāo lìng yì fāng miàn lí jiā jìn
Word guide: 一方面 – on one hand; 工资 – the pay; 高 – high; 另一方面 – on the other; 离 – from; 家 – home; 近 – close.

一方面 …，另一方面 …: on one hand, on the other



25.3.3 Two reasons or a contrast

- Two reasons in the same direction: **一方面是为了学习，一方面是为了交朋友。** – "Partly to study, partly to make friends."
- A contrast: **一方面我想去，另一方面又担心花钱太多。** – "On the one hand I want to go; on the other, I worry about spending too much."

一方面是为了学习，一方面是为了交朋友。
yì fāng miàn shì wèi le xué xí yì fāng miàn shì wèi le jiāo péng you
Word guide: 一方面 – partly; 是 – is; 为了 – for; 学习 – study; 一方面 – partly; 是 – is; 为了 – for; 交 – make; 朋友 – friends.

25.3.4 Parallel halves

- Keep both halves in the same shape: 一方面是 …，一方面是 ….
- Do not use 一方面 alone; it needs its partner.

25.3.5 Versus 不但 … 而且 …

- 不但 … 而且 … builds up: the second point is stronger.
- 一方面 … 一方面 … weighs two points equally, often in an argument or explanation.

不但便宜，而且好吃。
bú dàn pián yi ér qiě hǎo chī
Word guide: 不但 – not only; 便宜 – cheap; 而且 – but also; 好吃 – tasty.

25.3.6 Recap

- **一方面 …，(另) 一方面 …** = on the one hand …, on the other ….
- Two parallel aspects or a contrast; always used as a pair.

Practise this pattern step by step.

25.4 ■ Practice without the models

25.4.1 Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

2501.1 Complete: "It's cheap, all right, but the quality is poor." 便宜是 ……，但是质量不好。

2501.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 是好吃好吃，但是太辣了。
- B. 好吃是好吃，但是太辣了。
- C. 好吃是好吃，而且太辣了。
- D. 好吃是很好吃，但是太辣了。

2501.3 Build: "I do want to go, but I don't have time."

Arrange all chunks: 可是 / ， / 去是想去 / 没时间。

2501.4 漂亮是漂亮，但是 … concedes a point before objecting.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2501.5 Your friend loves a jacket in a shop. You agree it's pretty, but the price is crazy. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

25.4.2 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever)

2502.1 Complete: "As soon as class ended, he left." 一下课，他 …… 走了。

2502.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 一我到家，就他走了。
- B. 我到家一，他走就了。
- C. 我一到家，他就走了。
- D. 我一到家，就他走了。

2502.3 Build: "Whenever he drinks coffee, he can't sleep."

Arrange all chunks: 睡不着。/ 他 / 就 / 一喝咖啡

2502.4 一 … 就 … can describe a habit.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2502.5 Your friend's dog gets excited every time someone rings the doorbell. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

25.4.3 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other)

2503.1 Complete: “On the one hand it’s cheap; on the other, it’s close to home.” 一方面很便宜，另 …… 离家很近。

2503.2 What is wrong with 一方面我想去。?

- A. It needs 吗
- B. Nothing
- C. 一方面 needs its partner clause
- D. 一方面 must come last

2503.3 Build: “Partly to study, partly to make friends.”

Arrange all chunks: 交朋友。/ 一方面是为了 / ， / 一方面是为了学习

2503.4 一方面 … 一方面 … weighs two points equally.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2503.5 In a class debate, you explain why many young people move to big cities. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

25.5 ■ Answers and explanations

25.5.1 Adj + 是 + Adj，但是 … (concede, then object)

2501.1 便宜

The same word repeats on both sides of 是.

2501.2 B. 好吃是好吃，但是太辣了。

好吃是好吃，但是太辣了 is right: X 是 X repeats the same word with no 很, then a contrast with 但是. 而且 adds a point instead of objecting.

2501.3 去是想去，可是没时间。

A 是 A，可是 ….

2501.4 True.

That is the purpose of the pattern.

2501.5 One possible response: 漂亮是漂亮，但是太贵了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Use the identical word on both sides: 贵是贵, not 贵是很贵.
- The second clause must object; 好是好，而且 … does not work.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

25.5.2 一 … 就 … (as soon as / whenever)

2502.1 就

一 A，就 B.

2502.2 C. 我一到家，他就走了。

我一到家，他就走了 is right: 一 and 就 each come after their own subject (我一 …, 他就 …).

2502.3 他一喝咖啡就睡不着。

Subject + 一 + verb, 就 + result.

2502.4 True.

It means whenever as well as as soon as.

2502.5 One possible response: 门铃一响，它就跑过去。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 一 goes before the first verb, after its subject: 我一到, not 一我到.

- 就 goes after the second subject: 他就走了, not 就他走了.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

25.5.3 一方面 … ，一方面 … (on one hand / on the other)

2503.1 一方面

一方面 …，另一方面 ….

2503.2 C. 一方面 needs its partner clause

一方面 introduces one side and needs its partner: 一方面我想去，另一方面我没有时间. On its own the sentence is incomplete.

2503.3 一方面是为了学习，一方面是为了交朋友。

Parallel halves.

2503.4 True.

不但 … 而且 … builds up instead.

2503.5 One possible response: 一方面，大城市机会多；另一方面，生活也更方便。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Keep both halves in the same shape: 一方面是 …，一方面是 ….
- Do not use 一方面 alone; it needs its partner.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

26 Not only... but also...

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

26.1 ■ 不但 / 不仅 … ，而且 / 还 / 也 … (not only … but also)

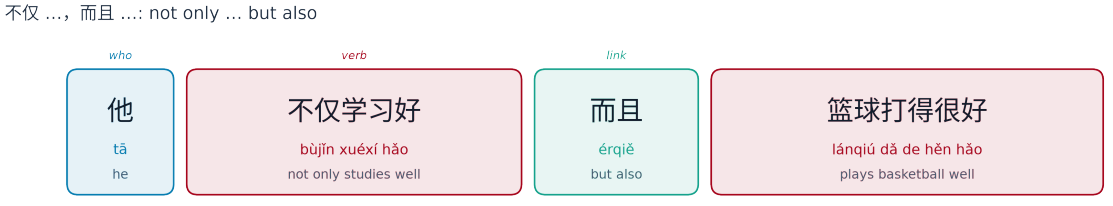
26.1.1 More than one talent

- You are introducing a new classmate who is a strong student and a great athlete.
- **他不仅学习好，而且篮球打得也很好。** – "Not only is he a good student, he's also great at basketball."

26.1.2 不但 / 不仅 A，而且 / 还 / 也 B

- **不但 / 不仅 A，而且 B** = not only A, but also B; B adds a further, often stronger point.
- 而且 can combine with 还 / 也: 而且还会唱歌. 不仅 is a little more formal.

她不仅会说英语，而且会说法语。
tā bù jǐn huì shuō Yīng yǔ ér qiě huì shuō Fǎ yǔ
Word guide: 她 – she; 不仅 – not only; 会 – can; 说 – speak; 英语 – English; 而且 – but also; 会 – can; 说 – speak; 法语 – French.



26.1.3 Two subjects

- With different subjects, 不但 / 不仅 go before the first subject: **不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。** – "Not only do the students like him, the teachers do too."
- With one subject, they follow it: 他不但聪明，而且很努力.

不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。
bù jǐn xué sheng xǐ huan tā lǎo shī yě xǐ huan tā
Word guide: 不仅 – not only; 学生 – students; 喜欢 – like; 他 – him; 老师 – teachers; 也 – also; 喜欢 – like; 他 – him.

26.1.4 Placement with one or two subjects

- One subject: subject first, then 不但: 他不但 …. Two subjects: 不但 first: 不但他 …，而且我也 ….
- The two points go the same direction; for a contrast use 但是.

26.1.5 不但不 …，反而 …

- **不但不 A，反而 B** = not only not A, but (contrary to expectation) B: 吃了药，病不但没好，反而更重了.
- This variant reverses expectations instead of adding a point.

病不但没好，反而更重了。
bìng bú dàn méi hǎo fǎn ér gèng zhòng le
Word guide: 病 – the illness; 不但 – not only; 没 – didn't; 好 – get better; 反而 – instead; 更 – even more; 重 – serious.

26.1.6 Recap

- **不但 / 不仅 A，而且 / 还 / 也 B** = not only A, but also B.
- One subject: after it; two subjects: before the first. 不但不 … 反而 … reverses expectation.

Practise this pattern step by step.

26.2 ■ Practice without the models

26.2.1 不但 / 不仅 … ，而且 / 还 / 也 … (not only … but also)

2601.1 Complete: "This phone is not only cheap but also good quality." 这个手机不仅便宜，…… 质量很好。

2601.2 Which sentence is correct for two subjects?

- A. 学生不仅喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。
- B. 不仅学生喜欢他，也老师喜欢他。
- C. 学生喜欢他不仅，老师也喜欢他。
- D. 不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。

2601.3 Build: "The illness not only didn't improve, it got worse."

Arrange all chunks: ， / 病不但没好 / 更重了。/ 反而

2601.4 With one subject, 不但 comes after the subject.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2601.5 You are introducing a new classmate who is a strong student and a great athlete. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

26.3 ■ Answers and explanations

26.3.1 不但 / 不仅 … ，而且 / 还 / 也 … (not only … but also)

2601.1 而且

不仅 … 而且 ….

2601.2 D. 不仅学生喜欢他，老师也喜欢他。

With two subjects, 不仅 comes before the first one.

2601.3 病不但没好，反而更重了。

不但不/没 …，反而 ….

2601.4 True.

True. With one subject, 不但 comes after it: 他不但聪明，而且很努力. With two different subjects, 不但 comes before the first subject.

2601.5 One possible response: 他不仅学习好，而且篮球打得也很好。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- One subject: subject first, then 不但: 他不但 …. Two subjects: 不但 first: 不但他 …，而且我也 ….
- The two points go the same direction; for a contrast use 但是.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

27 Comparing similar adverbs

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

27.1 ■ 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

27.1.1 Plan versus discovery

- You planned to take the bus, then found out your friend had been driving there all along.
- **我本来想坐公交车，原来你开车来了！** – "I was originally going to take the bus – oh, so you drove here!"

27.1.2 Both can mean "originally"

- **本来 / 原来 + earlier state**: 他本来住在北京 = 他原来住在北京 – "He originally lived in Beijing."
- Before a noun with 的, both work: 本来的计划 / 原来的计划.

他原来住在北京。
tā yuán lái zhù zài Běi jīng
Word guide: 他 – he; 原来 – originally; 住 – lived; 在 – in; 北京 – Beijing.



27.1.3 Only 原来: so it turns out

- **原来** announces a discovery: **原来是你！** – "Oh, it's you!"
- 本来 cannot do this: 本来是你 does not mean "so it's you".

原来他是老师。
yuán lái tā shì lǎo shī
Word guide: 原来 – so it turns out; 他 – he; 是 – is; 老师 – a teacher.

27.1.4 Only 本来: of course

- **本来就** = naturally, should have been obvious: 这件事本来就是你的错 – "This was your fault from the start."
- 原来就 does not carry this "of course" meaning.

27.1.5 Choose by job

- Discovery → 原来. Obvious from the start → 本来就. Original plan or state → either.
- **他本来不想来，后来朋友劝了他。** – "He didn't want to come at first, but then his friend persuaded him."

他本来不想来。
tā běn lái bù xiǎng lái
Word guide: 他 – he; 本来 – originally; 不 – not; 想 – want to; 来 – come.

27.1.6 Recap

- **Originally**: 本来 or 原来. **So it turns out**: only 原来. **Of course, naturally**: only 本来 (就).
- Pick the word by the job it does in the sentence.

Practise this pattern step by step.

27.2 ■ 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

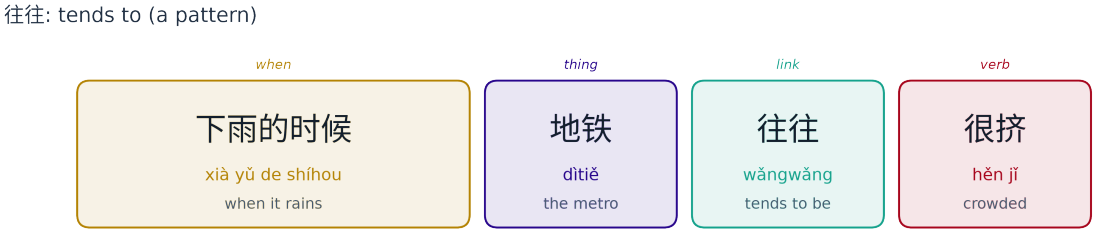
27.2.1 Rainy Mondays

- You notice a pattern: the subway is always more crowded when it rains.
- **下雨的时候，地铁往往很挤。** – "When it rains, the subway tends to be crowded."

27.2.2 常常 = often (a frequency)

- **常常** says something happens often: 我常常去图书馆. It can describe the future: 以后我会常常来.
- It needs no special condition.

我常常去图书馆。
wǒ cháng cháng qù tú shū guǎn
Word guide: 我 – I; 常常 – often; 去 – go to; 图书馆 – the library.



27.2.3 往往 = tends to (under a condition)

- **往往** describes a regular pattern found under certain conditions: **周末的超市往往人很多。** – "Supermarkets tend to be crowded at weekends."
- The condition (time, situation) is usually stated.

周末的超市往往人很多。
zhōu mò de chāo shì wǎng wǎng rén hěn duō
Word guide: 周末 – at weekends; 超市 – supermarkets; 往往 – tend to; 人 – people; 很多 – be many.

27.2.4 Where 往往 does not fit

- 往往 is not for wishes or the future: 以后我会常常来, not 以后我会往往来.
- Without a condition, 往往 sounds unfinished: 他往往迟到 is weak; 他下雨天往往迟到 works.

27.2.5 Side by side

- 我常常喝咖啡 – "I often drink coffee" (frequency).
- 我熬夜的时候往往喝咖啡 – "When I stay up late, I tend to drink coffee" (a pattern under a condition).

我熬夜的时候往往喝咖啡。
wǒ áo yè de shí hou wǎng wǎng hē kā fēi
Word guide: 我 – I; 熬夜 – stay up late; 时候 – when; 往往 – tend to; 喝 – drink; 咖啡 – coffee.

27.2.6 Recap

- **常常** = often (any time, including the future). **往往** = tends to, under a stated condition.
- 往往 is not for wishes or future plans.

Practise this pattern step by step.

27.3 ■ 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

27.3.1 Just now, or just?

- You arrive at the café and your friend says he has only just sat down; a moment ago he was outside on the phone.
- **我刚到，刚才在外面打电话。** – "I've just arrived; a moment ago I was outside on the phone."

27.3.2 刚 is an adverb

- **刚 + verb** = have just (done): 刚到, 刚吃完. It stands right before the verb.
- It can stretch to "recently": 他刚来北京两个月.

他刚来北京两个月。
tā gāng lái Běi jīng liǎng gè yuè

Word guide: 他 – he; 刚 – just; 来 – came to; 北京 – Beijing; 两个月 – two months.



27.3.3 刚才 is a time word

- **刚才** = a moment ago, like 昨天: it can start the sentence and works with adjectives and 没.
- **刚才很热，现在凉快了。** – "It was hot a moment ago; now it's cooler."

刚才很热，现在凉快了。
gāng cái hěn rè xiàn zài liáng kuai le
Word guide: 刚才 – a moment ago; 很 – very; 热 – hot; 现在 – now; 凉快 – cool.

27.3.4 Three tests

- Start of the sentence? Only 刚才. Before an adjective or 没? Only 刚才: 刚才没听见.
- With a duration after the verb (two months)? Only 刚: 刚来两个月.

27.3.5 Both possible

- **他刚走。** / **他刚才走了。** – both mean he left a moment ago.
- 刚 sentences usually have no 了; 刚才 sentences take 了 normally.

他刚才走了。
tā gāng cái zǒu le
Word guide: 他 – he; 刚才 – a moment ago; 走 – left.

27.3.6 Recap

- **刚 + verb** = have just (adverb; can stretch to "recently"; usually no 了).
- **刚才** = a moment ago (time word; can start the sentence; works with adjectives and 没).

Practise this pattern step by step.

27.4 ■ Practice without the models

27.4.1 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

2701.1 You open the door and see your cousin: "Oh, it's you!" …… 是你!

2701.2 "Students are of course supposed to study." Which fits? 学生 _____ 就应该学习。

- A. 本来
- B. 原来
- C. 后来
- D. 从来

2701.3 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 原来是这样!
- 1. 这本来就是你的事。
- 1. 他原来住在上海。
- A. He used to live in Shanghai.
- B. So that's how it is!
- C. This was your business from the start.

2701.4 本来的计划 and 原来的计划 both mean "the original plan".

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2701.5 You planned to take the bus, then found out your friend had been driving there all along. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

27.4.2 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

2702.1 Complete: "At weekends, parks tend to be full of people." 周末公园里 …… 人很多。

2702.2 "I'll come and visit you often in future." Which fits? 以后我会 _____ 来看你。

- A. 常常
- B. 从来
- C. 往往
- D. 本来

2702.3 Build: "When I stay up late, I tend to drink coffee."

Arrange all chunks: 我熬夜的时候 / 咖啡。/ 喝 / 往往

2702.4 往往 works well for future plans.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2702.5 You notice a pattern: the subway is always more crowded when it rains. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

27.4.3 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

2703.1 Complete: "I didn't hear you just now." …… 我没听见。

2703.2 Which says "She's only been working here for a week"?

- A. 她在这儿工作一个星期刚。
- B. 她在这儿刚工作了一个星期。
- C. 她刚才在这儿工作一个星期。
- D. 刚她在这儿工作一个星期。

2703.3 Build: "It was hot a moment ago."

Arrange all chunks: 很 / 刚才 / 热。

2703.4 他刚走 and 他刚才走了 can both describe someone who left a moment ago.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2703.5 You arrive at the café and your friend says he has only just sat down; a moment ago he was outside on the phone. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

27.5 ■ Answers and explanations

27.5.1 本来 vs 原来 (originally vs it turns out)

2701.1 原来

A discovery takes 原来.

2701.2 A. 本来

本来就 = naturally, of course.

2701.3 1–B: 原来是这样! = So that's how it is!; 2–C: 这本来就是你的事。= This was your business from the start.; 3–A: 他原来住在上海。= He used to live in Shanghai.

原来 = discovery or originally; 本来就 = of course.

2701.4 True.

For "original(ly)", both words work.

2701.5 One possible response: 我本来想坐公交车，原来你开车来了!

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- **本来就** = naturally, should have been obvious: 这件事本来就是你的错 – "This was your fault from the start."
- 原来就 does not carry this "of course" meaning.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

27.5.2 常常 vs 往往 (often vs tends to)

2702.1 往往

A pattern under a condition (weekends) takes 往往.

2702.2 A. 常常

Future and wishes take 常常.

2702.3 我熬夜的时候往往喝咖啡。

Condition + 往往 + verb.

2702.4 False.

False. 往往 states what tends to happen from past experience and cannot describe future plans. For plans use 常常: 以后我会常常来看你.

2702.5 One possible response: 下雨的时候，地铁往往很挤。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.

- 往往 is not for wishes or the future: 以后我会常常来, not 以后我会往往来.
- Without a condition, 往往 sounds unfinished: 他往往迟到 is weak; 他下雨天往往迟到 works.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

27.5.3 刚 vs 刚才 (adverb vs time-word)

2703.1 刚才

Only 刚才 starts the sentence and goes with 没.

2703.2 B. 她在这儿刚工作了一个星期。

刚 goes before the verb, and the duration follows the verb with 了; 刚才 means "a moment ago" and cannot carry a duration.

2703.3 刚才很热。

刚才 + adjective.

2703.4 True.

True. 刚 is an adverb ("just"): 他刚走. 刚才 is a time noun ("a moment ago") and usually takes 了: 他刚才走了. Both fit someone who left a moment ago.

2703.5 One possible response: 我刚到，刚才在外面打电话。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Start of the sentence? Only 刚才. Before an adjective or 没? Only 刚才: 刚才没听见.
- With a duration after the verb (two months)? Only 刚: 刚来两个月.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

28 Comparing similar prepositions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

28.1 ■ 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

28.1.1 A book about it, an attitude towards it

- You write a report on a documentary about climate change and how students feel about it.
- **这是一部关于气候变化的纪录片。对于这个问题，大家的看法不同。** – "This is a documentary about climate change. On this issue, opinions differ."

28.1.2 关于 = about (the topic)

- **关于** introduces the topic or content: 关于中国历史的书, 关于这件事.
- As a topic at the start of a sentence: 关于考试，老师还没通知.

关于考试，老师还没通知。
guān yú kǎo shì lǎo shī hái méi tōng zhī
Word guide: 关于 – about; 考试 – the exam; 老师 – the teacher; 还 – still; 没 – hasn't; 通知 – announced.



28.1.3 对于 = regarding (the target of an attitude)

- **对于** introduces what a judgement or action is directed at: **对于这个决定，我很满意。** – "I'm very satisfied with this decision."
- It can follow the subject: 我对于这件事没有意见.

对于这个决定，我很满意。
duì yú zhè ge jué dìng wǒ hěn mǎn yì
Word guide: 对于 – regarding; 这个 – this; 决定 – decision; 我 – I; 很 – very; 满意 – satisfied.

28.1.4 The subject's position

- 关于 phrases do not go after the subject: 关于这件事，我不知道, not 我关于这件事不知道.
- 对于 can go either before or after the subject: 对于他，… / 他对于 ….

28.1.5 Titles use 关于

- A book, talk or article title takes 关于: 《关于环境保护》.
- 对于 suits opinions and attitudes: 对于学生来说, 对于这个问题，我的看法是 ….

一篇关于环保的文章。
yì piān guān yú huán bǎo de wén zhāng
Word guide: 一 – a; 篇 – (measure word); 关于 – about; 环保 – the environment; 文章 – article.

28.1.6 Recap

- **关于** = about, introducing a topic. It often starts a topic phrase and can also occur inside a noun phrase; the whole construction controls its position.
- **对于** = regarding (target of an attitude or judgement); before or after the subject.

Practise this pattern step by step.

28.2 ■ 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

28.2.1 How far, and from where?

- A new classmate asks where you live and how you get to school.
- **我家离学校很近，我每天从家走路来。** – "My home is close to school; every day I walk here from home."

28.2.2 离 = distance from

- **A 离 B + 远 / 近 / distance** = how far A is from B: 我家离学校很近.
- Also for time: 离考试还有三天 – "There are still three days until the exam."

离考试还有三天。
lí kǎo shì hái yǒu sān tiān
Word guide: 离 – until; 考试 – the exam; 还有 – there are still; 三天 – three days.



28.2.3 从 = starting point

- **从 + place / time** = from (the starting point of movement or time): 从北京出发, 从八点开始.
- Often with 到: 从家到学校要二十分钟.

从家到学校要二十分钟。
cóng jiā dào xué xiào yào èr shí fēn zhōng
Word guide: 从 – from; 家 – home; 到 – to; 学校 – school; 要 – takes; 二十 – twenty; 分钟 – minutes.

28.2.4 Distance or starting point?

- A gap (远, 近, how many km) takes 离: 离这儿很远, not 从这儿很远.
- Movement or a beginning takes 从: 从这儿走, not 离这儿走.

28.2.5 One sentence, both words

- **从我家到公司很远，因为公司离市中心很远。** – "It's a long way from my home to the office, because the office is far from the city centre."
- 从 … 到 … measures a route; 离 measures a gap.

公司离市中心很远。
gōng sī lí shì zhōng xīn hěn yuǎn
Word guide: 公司 – the office; 离 – from; 市中心 – the city centre; 很 – very; 远 – far.

28.2.6 Recap

- **离** = the gap between two points (place or time): 离学校很近, 离考试三天.
- **从** = the starting point of movement or time: 从家出发, 从八点开始.

Practise this pattern step by step.

28.3 ■ Practice without the models

28.3.1 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

2801.1 Complete: "an article about the environment" 一篇 …… 环境的文章

2801.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 我关于这件事很满意。
- B. 关于这件事，我不知道。
- C. 我这件事关于不知道。
- D. 我关于这件事不知道。

2801.3 Build: "I'm very satisfied with this decision."

Arrange all chunks: 我 / 对于这个决定 / 很满意。/ ,

2801.4 对于 can come after the subject.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2801.5 You write a report on a documentary about climate change and how students

feel about it. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

28.3.2 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

2802.1 Complete: "The station is very close to here." 车站 …… 这儿很近。

2802.2 "The meeting runs from nine to eleven." Which fits? 会议 _____ 九点开到十一点。

- A. 从
- B. 在
- C. 向
- D. 离

2802.3 Build: "It takes twenty minutes from home to school."

Arrange all chunks: 二十分钟。 / 从家 / 要 / 到学校

2802.4 离考试还有三天 uses 离 for time.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2802.5 A new classmate asks where you live and how you get to school. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

28.4 ■ Answers and explanations

28.4.1 关于 vs 对于 (about vs regarding)

2801.1 关于

Topic and content take 关于.

2801.2 B. 关于这件事，我不知道。

关于这件事，我不知道 is right: a 关于 phrase ("about …") goes at the start, before the subject. For an attitude such as 满意, use 对 instead.

2801.3 对于这个决定，我很满意。

对于 + target, then the attitude.

2801.4 True.

True. 对于 can follow the subject: 他对于这件事没有意见. 关于 cannot; it normally starts the sentence or comes before 的 + noun (关于环境的文章).

2801.5 One possible response: 这是一部关于气候变化的纪录片。对于这个问题，大家的看法不同。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- 关于 phrases do not go after the subject: 关于这件事，我不知道, not 我关于这件事不知道.
- 对于 can go either before or after the subject: 对于他，… / 他对于 ….
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

28.4.2 离 vs 从 (gap from vs starting point)

2802.1 离

A gap takes 离.

2802.2 A. 从

A starting point paired with 到 takes 从 (从 … 到 …). 在 marks a single point in time, so it cannot open a span.

2802.3 从家到学校要二十分钟。

从 … 到 … + time needed.

2802.4 True.

离 can measure the gap until an event.

2802.5 One possible response: 我家离学校很近，我每天从家走路来。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- A gap (远, 近, how many km) takes 离: 离这儿很远, not 从这儿很远.
- Movement or a beginning takes 从: 从这儿走, not 离这儿走.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

29 Comparing similar separate functions

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

29.1 ■ 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

29.1.1 The opposite happened

- You took medicine for a headache, but it got worse.
- **吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。** – "After taking the medicine, my headache actually got worse."

29.1.2 反而 = instead, on the contrary (adverb)

- **反而** goes after the subject, before the verb: the result is the opposite of what was expected.
- It often follows 不但没 / 不但不: 他不但没生气，反而笑了.

他不但没生气，反而笑了。
tā bú dàn méi shēng qì fǎn ér xiào le
Word guide: 他 – he; 不但 – not only; 没 – didn't; 生气 – get angry; 反而 – instead; 笑 – laughed.



29.1.3 相反 = the opposite (adjective / linker)

- **相反** describes opposition: 意见相反 – "opposite opinions"; 正好相反 – "exactly the opposite".
- **相反，...** starts a sentence: "On the contrary, ...": 他不懒。相反，他很努力。

他不懒。相反，他很努力。
tā bù lǎn xiāng fǎn tā hěn nǔ lì
Word guide: 他 – he; 不 – not; 懒 – lazy; 相反 – on the contrary; 他 – he; 很 – very; 努力 – hard-working.

29.1.4 Position decides

- Inside a clause, before the verb, use 反而: 病反而重了, not 病相反重了.
- Starting a new sentence with a comma, or as "opposite", use 相反: 相反，…; 方向相反.

29.1.5 Together in a paragraph

- **我以为他会很难过，相反，他看起来很轻松。** – "I thought he'd be upset; on the contrary, he looked relaxed."
- Or with 反而: 我以为他会难过，他反而很轻松.

他反而很轻松。
tā fǎn ér hěn qīng sōng
Word guide: 他 – he; 反而 – instead; 很 – very; 轻松 – relaxed.

29.1.6 Recap

- **反而** = instead (adverb, after the subject, before the verb).
- **相反** = the opposite / on the contrary (adjective, or 相反，… starting a sentence).

Practise this pattern step by step.

29.2 ■ 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

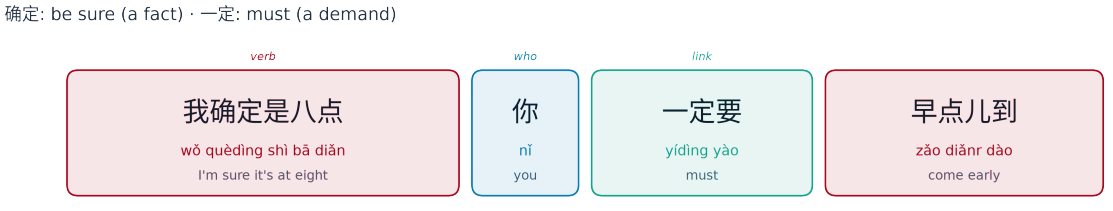
29.2.1 How sure are you?

- Your friend asks if the train leaves at eight. You checked the ticket twice.
- **我确定是八点，你一定要早点儿到。** – "I'm sure it's eight; you really must get there early."

29.2.2 一定 = certainly, must

- **一定 + verb** = certainly will / must: 他一定会来, 你一定要去.
- 不一定 = not necessarily: 贵的不一定好.

贵的不一定好。
guì de bù yí dìng hǎo
Word guide: 贵 – expensive; 的 – (ones); 不 – not; 一定 – necessarily; 好 – good.



29.2.3 肯定 = definitely (confident judgement)

- **肯定** = definitely, surely: 他肯定忘了 – "He's definitely forgotten."
- It can also be an adjective / verb of affirming: 老师肯定了我的想法 – "The teacher approved my idea."

他肯定忘了。
tā kěn dìng wàng le
Word guide: 他 – he; 肯定 – definitely; 忘 – forgot.

29.2.4 确定 = be sure, confirm (a verb)

- **确定** is a verb: be sure of, confirm, fix: 你确定吗? – "Are you sure?" 时间还没确定 – "The time hasn't been fixed."
- 确定 does not go before another verb as "certainly": 他一定会来, not 他确定会来 in that sense.

29.2.5 Which word when?

- Predicting or requiring: 一定 (一定要, 一定会). Guessing confidently: 肯定.
- Checking or deciding: 确定 (确定时间, 我不确定).

你确定吗?
nǐ què dìng ma
Word guide: 你 – you; 确定 – sure.

29.2.6 Recap

- **一定** = must / certainly (不一定 = not necessarily). **肯定** = definitely (confident guess; also "affirm").
- **确定** = be sure / confirm / fix (a verb).

Practise this pattern step by step.

29.3 ■ 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

29.3.1 Does it fit?

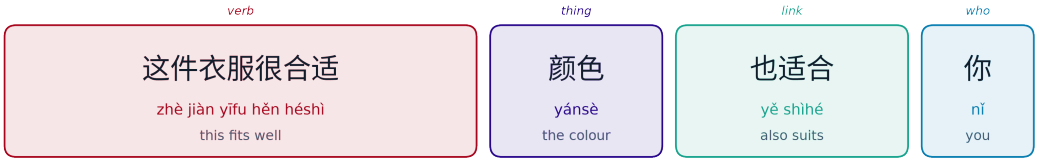
- You are trying on a jacket and ask your friend's opinion.
- **这件衣服很合适，颜色也很适合你。** – "This jacket fits well, and the colour suits you too."

29.3.2 适合 = to suit (a verb with an object)

- **适合 + object** = suit, be suitable for: 适合你, 适合学生, 适合跑步.
- It needs an object: 这个工作很适合他.

这个工作很适合他。
zhè ge gōng zuò hěn shì hé tā
Word guide: 这个 – this; 工作 – job; 很 – very; 适合 – suits; 他 – him.

合适: suitable (adj) · 适合: to suit (verb)



29.3.3 合适 = suitable (an adjective)

- **合适** describes something as fitting, right: 大小合适, 时间合适, 很合适.
- It takes no object: 这双鞋不太合适 – "These shoes don't fit well."

这双鞋不太合适。
zhè shuāng xié bú tài hé shì
Word guide: 这 – these; 双 – (pair of); 鞋 – shoes; 不太 – not very; 合适 – suitable.

29.3.4 Object or no object?

- With an object, use 适合: 适合你, not 合适你.
- Without an object, use 合适: 这个时间很合适, not 这个时间很适合.

29.3.5 对 … 合适 and 的

- To name the person with 合适, use 对: 对你来说很合适 – "very suitable for you".
- Both can describe a noun: 合适的工作 / 适合我的工作.

我在找一个合适的工作。
wǒ zài zhǎo yí gè hé shì de gōng zuò
Word guide: 我 – I; 在 – am; 找 – looking for; 一个 – a; 合适 – suitable; 工作 – job.

29.3.6 Recap

- **适合 + object** = to suit (适合你). **合适** = suitable, no object (很合适).
- 对 …(来说) 合适 names the person; both can describe a noun.

Practise this pattern step by step.

29.4 ■ Practice without the models

29.4.1 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

2901.1 Complete: "He didn't get angry; instead he laughed." 他没生气，…… 笑了。

2901.2 "Our opinions are exactly the opposite." Which fits? 我们的意见正好 _____。

- A. 相反
- B. 反而
- C. 倒
- D. 却

2901.3 Build: “After the medicine, the headache actually got worse.”

Arrange all chunks: ， 头疼 / 反而 / 更厉害了。/ 吃了药

2901.4 相反 can start a sentence followed by a comma.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2901.5 You took medicine for a headache, but it got worse. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

29.4.2 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

2902.1 Ask: “Are you sure?” 你 …… 吗?

2902.2 “Expensive things aren’t necessarily good.” Which fits? 贵的 _____ 好。

- A. 一定不
- B. 不肯定
- C. 不确定
- D. 不一定

2902.3 Match each sentence to its meaning.

- 1. 你一定要来。
- 1. 他肯定忘了。
- 1. 时间还没确定。
- A. He’s definitely forgotten.
- B. You really must come.
- C. The time hasn’t been fixed yet.

2902.4 老师肯定了我的想法 means the teacher approved my idea.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2902.5 Your friend asks if the train leaves at eight. You checked the ticket twice. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

29.4.3 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

2903.1 Complete: “This colour really suits you.” 这个颜色很 …… 你。

2903.2 Which sentence is correct?

- A. 这个时间很适合。
- B. 这个时间很适合合适。
- C. 这个时间合适你。
- D. 这个时间很合适。

2903.3 Build: “I’m looking for a suitable job.”

Arrange all chunks: 一个 / 我在找 / 工作。/ 合适的

2903.4 合适你 is correct.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

2903.5 You are trying on a jacket and ask your friend’s opinion. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson’s pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

29.5 ■ Answers and explanations

29.5.1 反而 vs 相反 (instead vs on the contrary)

2901.1 反而

反而 before the verb = instead.

2901.2 A. 相反

As the predicate meaning "opposite", use 相反: 我们的意见正好相反. 反而, 却 and 倒 are adverbs that need a verb after them.

2901.3 吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。

Subject + 反而 + verb phrase.

2901.4 True.

True. 相反 can start a sentence, followed by a comma, to mean "on the contrary": 他没生气，相反，他很高兴.

2901.5 One possible response: 吃了药，头疼反而更厉害了。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- Inside a clause, before the verb, use 反而: 病反而重了, not 病相反重了.
- Starting a new sentence with a comma, or as "opposite", use 相反: 相反，…; 方向相反.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

29.5.2 肯定 vs 确定 vs 一定 (sure / certain)

2902.1 确定

确定 is the verb "be sure".

2902.2 D. 不一定

不一定 means "not necessarily": 贵的不一定好. 一定不 means "definitely not", which is a different claim, and 不确定 / 不肯定 mean "unsure".

2902.3 1–B: 你一定要来。= You really must come.; 2–A: 他肯定忘了。= He's definitely forgotten.; 3–C: 时间还没确定。= The time hasn't been fixed yet.

一定 = must, 肯定 = definitely, 确定 = fix / be sure.

2902.4 True.

肯定 can be a verb meaning "affirm".

2902.5 One possible response: 我确定是八点，你一定要早点儿到。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- **确定** is a verb: be sure of, confirm, fix: 你确定吗? – "Are you sure?" 时间还没确定 – "The time hasn't been fixed."
- 确定 does not go before another verb as "certainly": 他一定会来, not 他确定会来 in that sense.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

29.5.3 适合 vs 合适 (to suit vs suitable)

2903.1 适合

With an object, 适合.

2903.2 D. 这个时间很合适。

这个时间很合适 is right: 合适 is an adjective with no object. 适合 is a verb and needs one (适合你), so 很适合 alone is incomplete.

2903.3 我在找一个合适的工作。

合适的 + noun.

2903.4 False.

合适 takes no object; say 适合你 or 对你合适.

2903.5 One possible response: 这件衣服很合适，颜色也很适合你。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- With an object, use 适合: 适合你, not 合适你.
- Without an object, use 合适: 这个时间很合适, not 这个时间很适合.
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.

30 Comparing similar time words

Original teaching practice. Read one pattern, cover its model and try the questions before checking the separate answer section. Examples adapted from Chinese Grammar Wiki (AllSet Learning, CC BY-NC-SA) retain the course-reference provenance.

30.1 ■ 以后 vs 的时候 (after vs when)

30.1.1 When or after?

- You tell a friend about last night: you were cooking when he called, and you called back after dinner.
- **你打电话的时候我在做饭，吃完饭以后我给你回了电话。** – "When you called, I was cooking; after dinner I called you back."

30.1.2 的时候 = at the same time

- **A 的时候，B** = when A (is happening), B: the two overlap.
- 我到的时候，他正在吃饭 – "When I arrived, he was eating."

我到的时候，他正在吃饭。
wǒ dào de shí hou tā zhèng zài chī fàn
Word guide: 我 – I; 到 – arrive; 的时候 – when; 他 – he; 正在 – was; 吃饭 – eating.



30.1.3 以后 = after, one then the other

- **A 以后，B** = after A has finished, B: the second follows the first.
- 下课以后，我们去打球 – "After class, we'll go and play ball."

下课以后，我们去打球。
xià kè yǐ hòu wǒ men qù dǎ qiú
Word guide: 下课 – class ends; 以后 – after; 我们 – we; 去 – go; 打球 – play ball.

30.1.4 Overlap or sequence?

- If B happens during A, use 的时候; if B happens after A ends, use 以后.
- 吃饭的时候别看手机 (during the meal) is different from 吃饭以后别马上睡觉 (after the meal).

30.1.5 With completed verbs

- Verb + 了 + 以后 stresses completion: 你到了以后给我打电话.
- For one finished event followed by another, 以后 is the safe choice: 我做完作业以后去睡觉.

你到了以后给我打电话。
nǐ dào le yǐ hòu gěi wǒ dǎ diàn huà
Word guide: 你 – you; 到 – arrive; 以后 – after; 给 – to; 我 – me; 打 – make; 电话 – a call.

30.1.6 Recap

- **的时候** = when (overlapping time); **以后** = after (one event follows another).
- Ask: does B happen during A or after it?

Practise this pattern step by step.

30.2 ■ Practice without the models

30.2.1 以后 vs 的时候 (after vs when)

3001.1 During the meal: "Don't look at your phone while eating." 吃饭 …… 别看手机。

3001.2 "After eating, don't go to bed straight away." Which fits? 吃饭 _____ 别马上睡觉。

- A. 以前
- B. 时候
- C. 的时候
- D. 以后

3001.3 Build: "After class, we'll go and play ball."

Arrange all chunks: 打球。/ 下课以后 / ， / 我们去

3001.4 我到的时候，他正在吃饭 means he was eating when I arrived.

True or false? Explain or repair the statement.

3001.5 You tell a friend about last night: you were cooking when he called, and you called back after dinner. Close the examples. Say a Mandarin response, then write it in Chinese. Explain briefly in English what the lesson's pattern adds. Compare with the model, then change one detail and try again.

Write or say your own response before reading the key.

30.3 ■ Answers and explanations

30.3.1 以后 vs 的时候 (after vs when)

3001.1 的时候

Overlapping time takes 的时候.

3001.2 D. 以后

After the meal has finished = 以后.

3001.3 下课以后，我们去打球。

A 以后，B.

3001.4 True.

True. … 的时候 marks time that overlaps with the main event: when I arrived, he was in the middle of eating. 以后 would mean he ate after I arrived.

3001.5 One possible response: 你打电话的时候我在做饭，吃完饭以后我给你回了电话。

Check meaning and form:

- My response conveys a message that fits the opening situation.
- I can explain the meaning of the pattern, rather than only naming it.
- If B happens during A, use 的时候; if B happens after A ends, use 以后.
- 吃饭的时候别看手机 (during the meal) is different from 吃饭以后别马上睡觉 (after the meal).
- I tried a second response with a name, time, place, or description changed.

This is supported productive practice. Compare meaning and structure; your answer need not copy the model. A partner or teacher must hear the spoken response to comment on pronunciation.